

Owner's Manual

2016 Audi A7 Sportback | S7 Sportback

Audi
Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally friendly manner.

In the Owner's Manual, you will also find the Operating Manual for your Infotainment system and the vehicle maintenance schedule.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

162.561.4GA.23

Table of contents

Owner's Literature 5

About this Owner's Manual 6

Operation 8
Cockpit 8
General illustration 8

Instruments and indicator lights 10
Instruments 10
Indicator lights 11
Driver information system 23
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 28

Opening and closing 30
Keys 30
Central locking 31
Luggage compartment lid 36
Child safety lock 39
Power Windows 39
Sunroof 40
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 41

Lights and Vision 43
Exterior lighting 43
Interior lighting 46
Vision 47
Windshield wipers 49

Seats and storage 52
General information 52
Front seats 53
Head restraints 55
Memory function 56
Ashtray 58
Cigarette lighter 58
12 Volt sockets 59
Storage 59
Roof rack 61
Luggage compartment 63
Pass-through with ski bag 66

Warm and cold 68
Climate control system 68
Three-zone climate control 69
Four-zone automatic climate control 71
Steering wheel heating 73

Driving 74
Steering 74
Starting and stopping the engine 75
Electromechanical parking brake 78
Start-Stop-System 80
Speed warning system 82
Cruise control system 83

Audi adaptive cruise control and braking guard 85
Introduction 85
General information 85
Audi adaptive cruise control 87
Audi braking guard 91
Messages 92

Audi active lane assist 94
Lane assist 94

Audi side assist 97
Side assist 97

Audi drive select 101
Driving settings 101
Raising/lowering the vehicle 103
Driver messages 103

Night vision assist 104
Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal highlighting 104

Automatic transmission 107
S tronic, tiptronic 107

Parking systems 114
General information 114
Parking system plus 115
Rearview camera 116
Peripheral cameras 119
Adjusting the display and the warning tones 124
Error messages 124
Trailer hitch 124

Safety 126
Driving safety 126
Basics 126
Correct passenger seating positions 127

Driver's and front passenger's footwell .. 131
Pedal area 131
Storing cargo correctly 132
Reporting Safety Defects 133

Safety belts 135
General information 135
Why use safety belts? 136
Safety belts 138
Belt tensioners 141

Airbag system 143
Important information 143
Front airbags 147
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 154
Knee airbags 159
Side airbags 161
Side curtain airbags 164

Child safety 167
Important information 167
Child seats 173
Securing child seats 177
LATCH system (Lower anchorages and tethers for children) 180
Additional information 184

Audi pre sense 185
Preventative passenger protection 185

Driver messages 187
Intelligent Technology 187
Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules 187
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 188
Braking 190
Electromechanical steering, dynamic steering 192
All wheel drive (quattro) 192
Rear spoiler 193
Energy management 194

Driving and the environment 196
Breaking in 196
Avoid damaging the vehicle 196
Driving through water on roads 196
Catalytic converter 197
Diesel particulate filter 198
Placing your vehicle out of service 198
Economical and environmentally-friendly driving 198

Trailer mode 201
Driving with a trailer 201
Trailer mode notes 203

Operating instructions 205
Care and cleaning 205
General information 205
Car washes 205
Cleaning and care information 206

Fuel and Refueling 210
Gasoline 210
Diesel fuel 211
Refueling 212
Selective catalytic reduction 214

Checking and Filling 218
Hood 218
Engine compartment 220
Engine oil 220
Cooling system 224
Brake fluid 227
Battery 228
Windshield/headlight washer container . 231

Wheels 233
Wheels and Tires 233
Tire pressure monitoring system 251

Troubleshooting 253
Emergency assistance 253
Warning triangle 253
Vehicle tool kit 253
Replacing wheels 255

Fuses 261
Replacing fuses 261
Driver side cockpit fuse assignment 262

162.561.4GA.23

Front passenger side cockpit fuse assignment 263
Luggage compartment fuse assignment . 263

Emergency situations 265
General 265
Starting by pushing or towing 265
Starting with jumper cables 265
Use of jumper cables 266
Towing with a tow truck 267
Raising the vehicle 269

Technical Data 271
Technical data 271
Vehicle identification 271
Weights 271
Dimensions 272
Capacities 272
Gasoline engines 273
Diesel engines 273

Consumer information 274
Warranty coverages 274
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 274
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 274
Maintenance 274
Accessories and technical changes 276
Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunication and Electronic Systems 277

Index 278

In addition to this Owner's Manual, your Audi comes with the

– MMI Operating Instructions
– Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

If you are missing one of these publications, or if you believe that the information is not complete, contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

MMI Operating Instructions

contain detailed description of the Audi Multi Media Interface (MMI) including the navigation system, the sound system and the handheld phone.

The Warranty & Maintenance booklet

explains how you can keep your Audi in top driving condition by having it serviced regularly and contains detailed information about the warranties covering your Audi. Always have the booklet with you when you take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer for service. Your Audi Service Advisor will record each scheduled service and can answer any questions you may have regarding how to maintain your vehicle.

In Canada,

the vehicle literature is also available in French. To obtain a copy, contact your dealer or write to:

Au Canada, on peut se procurer un exemplaire en français de ce document auprès du concessionnaire ou de:

Audi Canada
Client Assistance
Assistance a la Clientele
777 Bayly Street, West,
Ajax, Ontario L1S 7G7

If you sell your Audi

all literature should be left in the vehicle to make the Warranty terms as well as all operating, safety and maintenance information available to the next owner.

If you change your address or if you bought this Audi used

be sure to send in a "Notice of Address Change" / "Notice of Used Car Purchase" post card. This card can be found in the Warranty & Maintenance booklet or obtained from your authorized Audi dealer.

It is in your own interest that we are able to contact you should the need arise.

162.561.4GA.23

This manual contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** are designed as a general guide and on your vehicle may look slightly different than what is illustrated.

There is a **Table of Contents** at the beginning of this owner's manual that lists all of the topics covered in this book in the order that they appear. There is also an alphabetical **Index** at the end of this owner's manual.

All **directions,** such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING” within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

Cockpit

General illustration

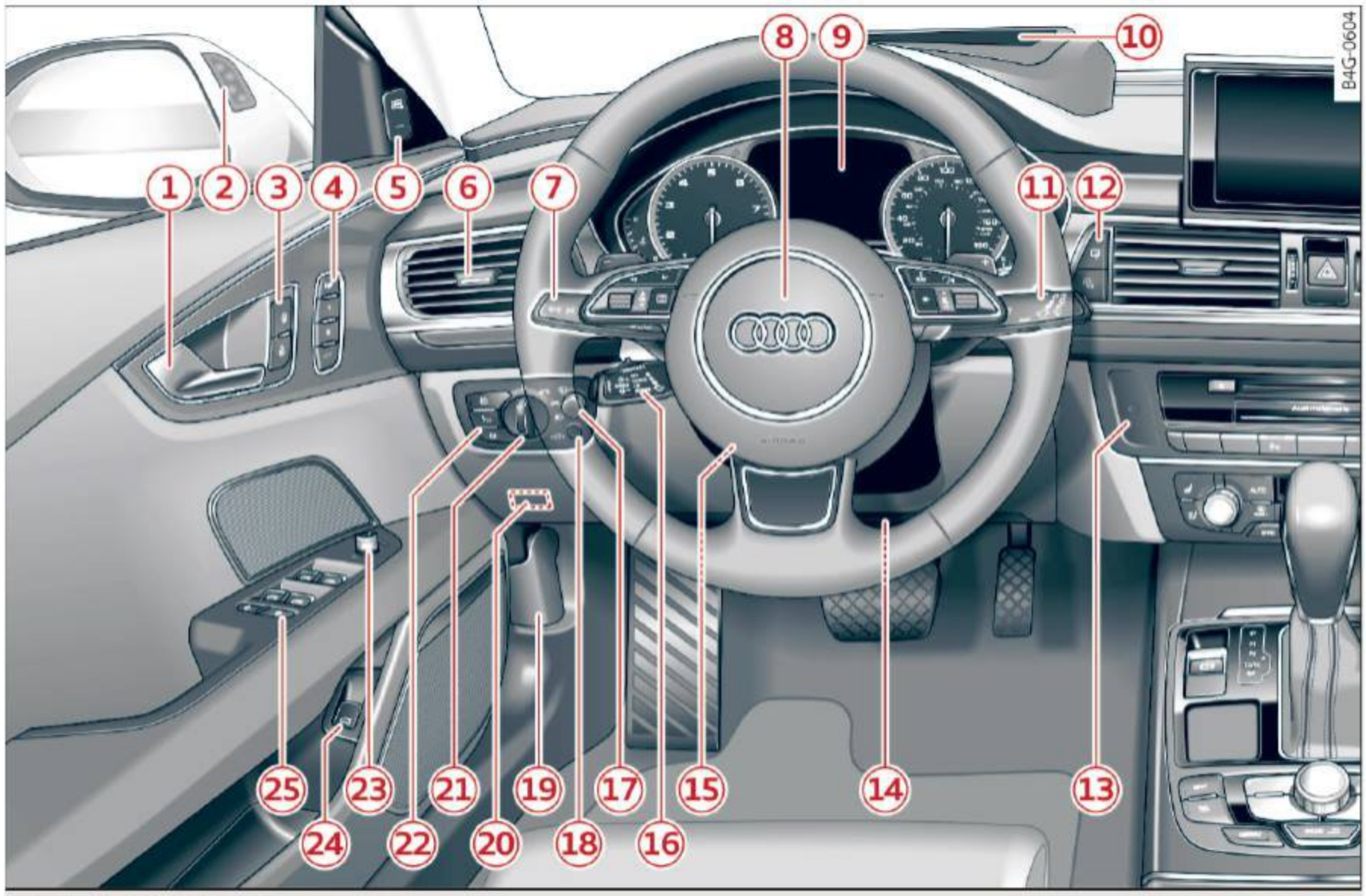


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

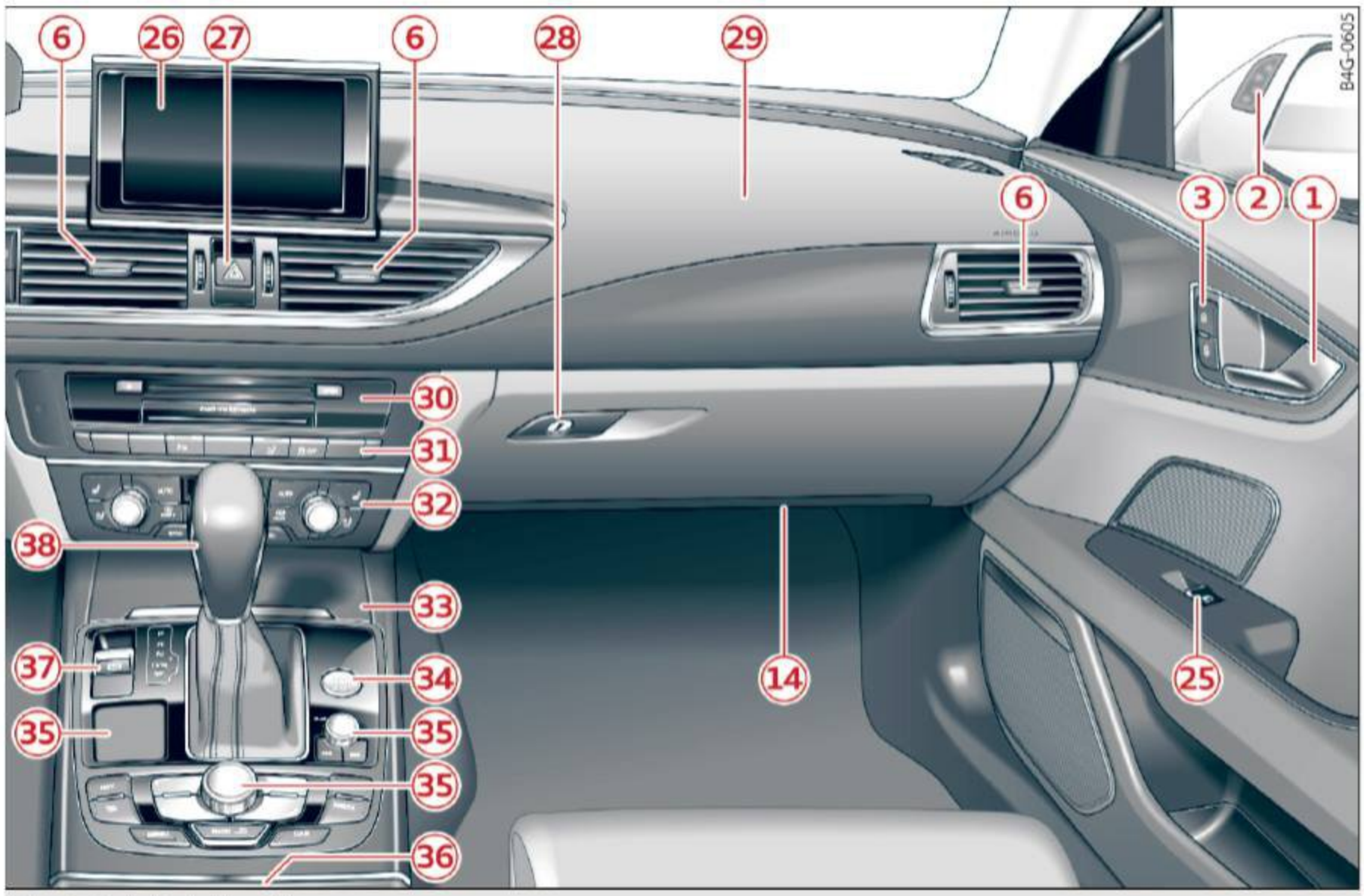


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

① Door handle

② Audi side assist display 97

③ Power locking switches 35

④ Memory function buttons 56

⑤ Audi side assist button 97

⑥ Air vents with thumbwheel

⑦ Control lever for:
- Turn signal and high beam 44
- Audi active lane assist 94
- High beam assist 44

⑧ Multifunction steering wheel with:
- Horn
- Driver's airbag 147
- Driver information system buttons 23
- Audio/video, telephone, navigation and voice recognition buttons
- Steering wheel heating 73
- Shift paddles (automatic transmission) 111

⑨ Instrument cluster 10

⑩ Head-up Display 27

⑪ Windshield washer system lever . 49

⑫ Buttons for:
- MMI display
- Reset button for trip odometer . 26

⑬ Starting the engine if there is a malfunction 77

⑭ Knee airbag 159

⑮ Steering wheel adjustment, depending on equipment:
- mechanical 74
- electrical 74

⑯ Lever for:
- Cruise control system 83
- Adaptive cruise control 85

⑰ Button for switching the Head-up Display on/off, adjusting the height . . 27

⑱ Instrument illumination 47

⑲ Engine hood release 218

⑳ Data Link Connector for On Board Diagnostics (OBD II) 28

㉑ Light switch 43

㉒ Buttons for:
- All-weather lights 43
- Night vision assistant 104
- Rear fog lights 43

㉓ Power exterior mirror adjustment 47

㉔ Rear lid switch 36

㉕ Power windows 39

㉖ MMI display

㉗ Emergency flashers 46

㉘ Glove compartment 60

㉙ Front passenger's airbag 147

㉚ Drives (MMI)

㉛ Buttons/Indicator lights for
- Start-Stop-System 80
- Parking system 114
- PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 155
- Rear spoiler 193
- Electronic Stabilization Control . 189

㉜ Climate controls, depending on vehicle equipment:
- Three-zone climate control 69
- Four-zone automatic climate control 71

㉝ Storage compartment or ashtray with cigarette lighter 58, 58

㉞ START ENGINE STOP button . . . 75

㉟ MMI controls

㊱ 12-volt socket, Cupholder 59, 59

㊲ Electromechanical parking brake . 78

㊳ Selector lever (automatic transmission) 107

Tips

- Some of the equipment or features shown in the general illustration may be standard equipment on your vehicle or may be optional equipment depending on your model. Always ask your authorized Audi dealer if you have a question about your vehicle.
- Operation of the Multi Media Interface (MMI) is described in a separate manual.

162.561.4GA.23

Instruments and indicator lights

Instruments

Instrument cluster overview

The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.



Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview

① Engine coolant temperature gauge . . 10
② Tachometer 11
– with status indicator **OFF** 75
– with status indicator **READY** . . . 80
③ Turn signals 44
④ Display with
– Driver information system 23
– Indicator lights 11
⑤ Tachometer
⑥ Fuel level 11

Tips

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is turned on and the lights are turned off. The illumination for the dials reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the headlights on at the appropriate time.

Engine coolant temperature gauge

The engine coolant gauge ① ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* only works when the ignition is on. To prevent damage to your engine, please note the following important points:

Engine cold

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, heavy engine loads and heavy throttle applications.

Normal temperature

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on under normal driving conditions. The LEDs higher up may turn on when the engine is under heavy load or the exterior temperature is high. This is no need to worry as long as the warning light in the instrument cluster does not illuminate. If the LEDs in the upper area of the display and the indicator light in the instrument cluster display turn on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 15*.

WARNING

– Always observe the warning in ⇨ *page 218*, before opening the hood and checking the engine coolant level. ▶

– Never open the engine hood if you see or hear steam, or if you see engine coolant dripping from the engine compartment. You could burn yourself. Let the engine cool off first until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.

Note

– Mounting additional lights or accessories in front of the air inlets reduces the cooling effect of the radiator. At high outside temperatures or high engine load, the engine could overheat.
– The front spoiler has been designed to properly distribute the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged, this could reduce the cooling effect and the engine could then overheat. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

You should shift to the next lowest gear when the speed is below 1500 RPM. The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in and when it is warmed up to operating temperature. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, choose the D or S selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Note

The tachometer needle ① ⇨ *page 10, fig. 3* should only be in the red zone briefly: otherwise, this increases the risk of engine damage. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Upshifting early helps you to save fuel and reduce operating noise.

Fuel level

The fuel gauge only works when the ignition is on. If the fuel level drops below 2.6 gallons (10 liters), the bottom LED turns red and the indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 21*. The bottom LED blinks red when the fuel level is very low.

The possible range based on the current fuel level is shown in tab Ⓐ ⇨ *page 23, fig. 4*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 272*.

Note

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause the engine to misfire. Uncombusted fuel will then enter the exhaust system. This can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Indicator lights

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions ⇨ ⚠.

Messages may appear with some indicator lights. A warning signal will sound at the same time. The indicator lights and messages in the center of the displays may be replaced by other displays. To show them again, select the tab for indicator lights and messages using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 23*. If there are several malfunctions, you can display them one at a time using the thumbwheel.

Some indicators lights in the display can turn on in several colors.

WARNING

– Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information may result in serious personal injury or vehicle damage.
– Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn on the emergency flasher ⇨ *page 46*.

– The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before you check anything in the engine compartment, stop the engine and let it cool down. Always exercise extreme caution when working under the hood ⇨ *page 218*.

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly to check the function of that system when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

Red indicator lights

BRAKE	**USA models:** Brake malfunction ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
(!)	**Canada models:** Brake malfunction ✓ ⇨ *page 14*
PARK	**USA models:** Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 15*
(P)	**Canada models:** Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine cooling system ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 16*
MIN	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 17*
	Battery ⇨ *page 16*
	Engine stops while driving ⇨ *page 16*
	Safety belt ⇨ *page 16*
!	Electromechanical steering ✓ ⇨ *page 192*
	Electronic steering column lock ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 17*
MPH	**USA models:** Speed warning system ⇨ *page 82*
Km/h	**Canada models:** Speed warning system ⇨ *page 82*
	Adaptive cruise control* ✓ ⇨ *page 87*
	Air suspension* ⇨ *page 17*
	Night vision assistant* ⇨ *page 104*
	Night vision assistant* ⇨ *page 104*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 193*
AdBlue	Refill AdBlue* ⇨ *page 214*
AdBlue	AdBlue malfunction* ⇨ *page 214*

Yellow indicator lights

AIR BAG	**USA models:** Safety systems ⇨ *page 18*
	Canada models: Safety systems ⇨ *page 18*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 18*
OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 18*
ABS	**USA models:** Anti-lock braking system (ABS) defective ✓ ⇨ *page 19*
(ABS)	**Canada models:** Anti-lock braking system (ABS) defective ✓ ⇨ *page 19*
	Worn brake pads ⇨ *page 19*

	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 15*
	Tire pressure monitoring system ✓ ⇨ *page 251*
TPMS	Tire pressure monitoring system ⇨ *page 251*
EPC	Electronic power control ✓ (alternative to ) ⇨ *page 20*
	Glow plug system (alternative to EPC) ⇨ *page 20*
	Malfunction indicator Lamp (MIL) ✓ ⇨ *page 20*
	Diesel particulate filter* clogged ⇨ *page 20*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 21*
	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 21*
	Request to warm engine by driving ⇨ *page 21*
	Battery ⇨ *page 16*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 21*
	Windshield washer fluid level ⇨ *page 21*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 21*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 75*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 77*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 31*
	Defective light bulb warning ⇨ *page 21*

	Rear fog light(s) ⇨ *page 21*
	Headlight range control ⇨ *page 22*
	adaptive light* ⇨ *page 22*
	Light-/rain sensor faulty ⇨ *page 22*
	Audi active lane assist* ⇨ *page 95*
	Transmission (tiptronic) ⇨ *page 112*
	Transmission - S tronic ⇨ *page 112*
	Electronic steering column lock ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 17*
	Brake booster ⇨ *page 18*
	Electromechanical steering, dynamic steering* ✓ ⇨ *page 192*
	Air suspension* ⇨ *page 17*
	Sport differential* ⇨ *page 22*
	Rear spoiler ⇨ *page 193*
AdBlue 	Refill AdBlue* ⇨ *page 214*
AdBlue 	AdBlue malfunction* ⇨ *page 214*

Other indicator lights

	Turn signals ⇨ *page 22*
CRUISE	**USA models:** Cruise control* ⇨ *page 83*
	**Canada models:** Cruise control* ⇨ *page 83*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 87*

	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 87*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 87*
	Audi active lane assist* ⇨ *page 95*
	Start-Stop-System* ⇨ *page 80*
	Start-Stop-System* ⇨ *page 80*
	High beam assist* ⇨ *page 44*
	High beam ⇨ *page 44*

BRAKE / (!) Brake system

The light illuminates when the ignition is switched on. It goes out after the engine has been started. This indicates that the brake warning light is functioning properly.

If the brake warning light does not light up when the engine is cranking, there may be a malfunction in the electrical system. In this case, contact your Audi dealer.

If the brake system warning/indicator light turns on, there is a brake system malfunction.

BRAKE (USA models)/(!) (Canada models) Stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, proceed as follows:

- ▸ Pull off the road.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ Check the brake fluid level ⇨ *page 227*.
- ▸ Contact your nearest authorized repair facility if necessary.

Warning! Fault in brake system. Contact dealer

If the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models)/(ABS) (Canada models), the ESC indicator light and the brake system indicator light BRAKE (USA models)/(!) (Canada models) turn on and the message appears, the ABS, ESC and braking distribution are not working ⇨ ⚠.

Carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE (USA models)/(!) (Canada models) Parking brake: system fault! Please contact dealer

– If the indicator light and the message appear **when stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. After releasing the parking brake, carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected. If you cannot release the parking brake, seek professional assistance.

– If the indicator light and the message appear **while driving**, the emergency braking function may not be available. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Seek professional assistance.

(USA models): If the warning light BRAKE and the warning light appear together, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected ⇨ *page 19*.

When the light comes on, an audible warning signal is also given.

⚠ WARNING

– Always observe the warnings in ⇨ *page 218*, before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid.
– Driving with low brake fluid is a safety hazard. Stop the car and get professional assistance.
– If the BRAKE (USA models)/(!) (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may have failed. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve and increase the risk of sliding. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or other qualified ▸

workshop and have the malfunction corrected.
– If the brake warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds and the parking brake is released, or lights up while you are driving, the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is too low. If you believe that it is safe to do so, proceed immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility and have the brake system inspected.
– Always keep in mind that after several brake applications, you will need greater pressure on the brake pedal to stop your vehicle. Do not rely on strained brakes to respond with maximum stopping power in critical situations. You must allow for increased braking distances. The extra distance used up by fading brakes could lead to an accident.

PARK/Ⓟ Electromechanical parking brake

The warning/indicator light monitors the electromechanical parking brake.

If the indicator light PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) turns on, the parking brake was set.

PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Caution: Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to keep the vehicle from rolling. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away even on a small incline.

Press brake pedal to release parking brake

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal and press the button Ⓟ or start driving with starting assist at the same time ⇨ *page 79*.

Please release parking brake

To release the parking brake manually, press the brake pedal and press the button Ⓟ at the same time. The parking brake only releases automatically if the driver's safety belt is fastened.

Parking brake!

If the Ⓟ indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a parking brake malfunction. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine cooling system malfunction

A malfunction in the engine cooling system must be repaired as soon as possible.

Switch off engine and check coolant level

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

- ▸ Pull off the road.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ Check coolant level ⇨ *page 224*.
- ▸ Add coolant if necessary ⇨ *page 225*.
- ▸ Continue driving only after the engine coolant warning/indicator light goes out.
- ▸ Contact your authorized Audi dealer for assistance if necessary.

If the engine coolant level is correct, then the radiator fan may be the cause of the malfunction.

Coolant temperature too high! Please let engine run with vehicle stationary

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool down.

WARNING

– If your vehicle should break down for mechanical or other reasons, park at a safe distance from moving traffic, turn off the engine and turn on the hazard warning lights ⇨ *page 46, Emergency flasher*.
– Never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment - you risk being scalded. Wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.
– The engine compartment of any vehicle is a dangerous area. Before you perform any work in the engine compartment, turn of ▶

the engine and allow it to cool. Follow the warning stickers ⇨ *page 218*.

Note

Do not continue driving if the symbol illuminates. There is a malfunction in the engine cooling system – you could damage your engine.

Battery

This warning/indicator light detects a malfunction in the generator or in the vehicle's electrical system.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when you switch on the ignition and must go out after the engine has started.

Alternator fault: Battery is not being charged

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there is a malfunction in the generator or vehicle electrical system.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop immediately. Because the vehicle battery is discharging, turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment such as the radio. Seek professional assistance if the battery charge level is too low.

Low battery: battery will be charged while driving

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, there may be limited starting ability.

If this message turns off after a little while, the battery charged enough while driving.

If the message does not turn off, have your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop correct the malfunction.

Engine stop while driving

Engine stopped: No power steering and brake support.

There is a malfunction in the engine or in the fuel supply system.

More force is needed to steer and brake the moving vehicle when the engine is stopped. If the vehicle is rolling, try to stop it carefully on the side of the road away from moving traffic. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

Safety belts

This warning/indicator light reminds you to put on your safety belt.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on to remind the driver and any front passenger to put on the safety belt. Additionally, an acoustic warning (gong) will also sound.

For more Information ⇨ *page 135, Safety belt warning light*.

Engine oil pressure malfunction

The red engine oil pressure warning symbol requires immediate service or repair. Driving with a low-oil-pressure indication is likely to inflict severe damage to the engine.

Switch off engine and check oil level

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the oil pressure is too low.

- ▸ Pull off the road.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ **Check the engine oil level** ⇨ *page 222*.
- ▸ If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 222*. Make sure that the oil pressure warning symbol appears no longer in the display before you start driving again. ▶

▸ If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. Seek professional assistance.

Tips

- **The engine oil pressure symbol is not an indicator for a low engine oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**
- **The yellow oil level warning indication requires oil refill or workshop service without delay. Do not wait until the red oil pressure warning starts to flash before you respond to the low oil level warning . By then, your engine may already have suffered serious damage.**

Engine oil

Please add oil immediately.

Add oil immediately ⇨ *page 220*.

Add oil max. X L. You may continue driving

Add the amount of oil indicated in the display immediately ⇨ *page 220*.

Steering lock

Do not drive vehicle: Steering defective

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering lock: System fault Please contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Do not tow your vehicle when there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock - this increases the risk of an accident.

Engine start system

Engine start system fault. Please contact dealer

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine start system fault. Please contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the engine starting system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension

Air suspension: System fault You can drive slowly (max. speed 60 km/h)

There is a malfunction that can result in restricted driving stability.

Carefully drive at a maximum speed of 35 mph (60 km/h) to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension: Service mode. Vehicle can only be moved with restrictions

Carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop immediately to have the service mode deactivated.

Air suspension: System fault

There is a system malfunction that can result in restricted driving stability or reduced ground clearance. ▶

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension: Vehicle too low Ground clearance reduced

The ground clearance is very low due to a system malfunction. Wait until the air suspension system has restored normal ground clearance. Otherwise, conditions such as an uneven road surface can lead to vehicle damage.

Safety systems

The AIR BAG (USA models)/ (Canada models) indicator light monitors the safety systems (e.g. airbags, pretensioners) and illuminates for a few seconds each time you switch the ignition on.

If the AIR BAG (USA models)/ (Canada models) indicator light does not go out, or if it illuminates while you are driving, or if it starts to blink, then there is a malfunction somewhere in the system. If the light does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, this also means there is a malfunction.

WARNING

If you have a malfunction in the safety systems, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately. Otherwise the safety systems may not work properly in an accident.

Brake booster

Brake servo: limited functionality. You can continue driving. Contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the brake booster. The brake booster is available, but its effectiveness is reduced. Braking behavior may be different from how it normally functions and the brake pedal may vibrate.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESP or ASR (anti-slip regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

If the OFF indicator light turns on, ESC was switched off using the OFF button ⇨ *page 188*.

Stabilization control (ESC/ABS) malfunction! See owner's manual

If the indicator light and the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models) turn on and the message appears, the ABS or electronic differential lock is malfunctioning. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

If the BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may have failed. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve and increase the risk of sliding. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop and have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on ESC and ABS, refer to ⇨ *page 188*.

ABS/(ABS) Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

This warning/indicator light monitors the ABS and the electronic differential lock (EDL).

The warning/indicator light ABS (USA models) / (ABS) (Canada models) will come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. The light will go out after an automatic check sequence is completed.

There is a malfunction in the ABS when:

– The warning/indicator light does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on.
– The warning/indicator light does not go out after a few seconds.
– The warning/indicator light illuminates while driving.

The ESC indicator light also illuminates if there is a malfunction in the ABS. The message **Stabilization control (ESC/ABS): Fault! See owner's manual** also appears in the instrument cluster display and a warning tone sounds.

The brake system will still respond even without the assistance of the ABS system. See your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible to restore full braking performance. For more information regarding the ABS ⇨ *page 188*.

Malfunction in the brake system

If the brake warning light ⇨ *page 14* and the ABS warning illuminate *together* there may be a malfunction in the ABS, and there may also be a malfunction in the brake system itself ⇨ ⚠. **The ABS will not work and you will notice a change in braking response and performance.**

In the event of a **malfunction in the brake system** the warning/indicator light BRAKE (USA models)/(!) (Canada models) in the instrument cluster flashes ⇨ *page 14*.

Malfunction in the electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDL works together with the ABS. The ABS warning light will come on if there is a malfunction in the EDL system ⇨ *page 188*. See your authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

WARNING

– If the ABS (USA models)/(ABS) (Canada models) warning light does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your Audi dealer as soon as possible.
– *USA models:* If the BRAKE warning light, the (!) warning light and the ABS warning light come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.
– *Canada models:* If the brake warning light (!), the (!) warning light and the ABS warning light (ABS) come on together, the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control and an accident. Have your vehicle repaired immediately by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake applications.

Worn brake pads

Brake pads!

If the warning light illuminates, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads inspected. On USA models the warning light comes on together with the warning light BRAKE. Both sets of brake pads on an axle must always be replaced at the same time.

WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury. ▶

– If the warning light and the warning light BRAKE[1] with the message **Brake pads!** comes on in the instrument cluster display, immediately contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have all brake pads checked or replaced if necessary.

EPC Electronic power control

Applies to vehicles: with gasoline engine

This warning/indicator light monitors the electronic power control.

The EPC warning/indicator light (Electronic Power Control) illuminates when you switch the ignition on as a function check.

Tips

If this warning/indicator light illuminates while you are driving, then there is a malfunction in the engine electronics. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or qualified repair facility.

Glow plug system

Applies to vehicles: with diesel engine

The control light illuminates when the glow plug system is active.

If the indicator light illuminates, the glow plug system is active. You should start the engine immediately after the indicator light switches off. The indicator light only illuminates for approximately 1 second if the engine is warm or if the outside temperature is above 46 ºF (8 ºC).

Tips

– If the glow plug indicator light illuminates while driving, there is an engine control malfunction. The engine should be checked immediately.
– If the indicator light does not illuminate at all when switching the ignition on, there may be a malfunction in the glow plug system. The engine should be checked.

1) BRAKE: USA models only

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system. The symbol lights up when the ignition is switched on and will turn off after the engine has started and has settled at a constant idle speed. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

The warning light illuminates when there is a malfunction in the engine electronic system. Contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the malfunction corrected.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate ⇨ *page 212*.

For more information ⇨ *page 28*.

Diesel particulate filter

Applies to vehicles: with diesel engine and diesel particulate filter

Particulate filter: System fault See owner's manual

The diesel particulate filter requires regeneration. To support the filter's self-cleaning function:

Drive for approximately 15 minutes with the selector lever in the S position at a minimum speed of 37 mph (60 km/h) and an engine speed of approximately 2,000 RPM. The temperature increase that will result from this can burn off the soot in the filter. The symbol will switch off when the cleaning is successful.

If the indicator light does **not** turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Always adapt your speed to the current weather, road and traffic conditions. You should never disobey traffic laws in order to follow driving recommendations. ▶

Tips

For additional information on the diesel particulate filter, refer to ⇨ *page 198*.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to vehicles: with engine speed limitation

Engine speed maximum XXXX RPM

The engine speed is automatically limited to the speed displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the EPC indicator light also turns on. Make sure that the speed does not go above the speed displayed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level! Sensor defective

If the symbol illuminates, contact your authorized Audi dealer and have the oil sensor inspected. Until you have this done, check the oil level each time you refuel just to be on the safe side ⇨ *page 222*.

Engine warm-up request

Please warm up engine

Fuel has entered the engine oil, either from low outside temperatures or frequent short drives. Drive until the engine is warm so that the fuel in the engine oil will evaporate. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads when doing this.

Fuel tank system

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 2.6 gallons (10 liters) of fuel left in the tank.

Fuel tank system malfunction! Contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

More information on refueling is available on page ⇨ *page 212*.

Washer fluid level

Please refill washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off ⇨ *page 231*.

Windshield wipers

Windshield wiper defective

There is a malfunction with the windshield wipers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Defective light bulb warning

If the indicator light turns on, a light has failed. The message indicates the location of the light. If the indicator light also turns on, then a rear fog light has failed. The position of the indicator light corresponds with the location on the vehicle.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Vehicle lights: Malfunction

There is a malfunction in the headlights or the light switch. ▶

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Headlight range control

Headlight range control: defective!

If the symbol illuminates, the headlight range control is no longer working properly. Have the system checked and repaired at your Audi dealer.

Adaptive Light

Applies to vehicles: with Adaptive Light

Audi adaptive light: system fault

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the adaptive light system. The headlights still function.

Go to an authorized dealership to have the headlights or the control unit for the Adaptive Light repaired.

Light/rain sensor

Automatic headlights/ automatic wipers: System fault

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

For safety reasons, the low beams are turned on permanently with the switch in **AUTO**. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. You can still control all functions that are independent of the rain sensor through the windshield wiper lever.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Sport differential

Applies to vehicles: with sport differential

Sport differential: system fault

There is a malfunction with the sport differential.

Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Sport differential: overheating

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

WARNING

Contact your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop if the sport differential is faulty or malfunctioning. The repair must be performed by trained personnel using the correct oil in order to ensure safety.

Turn signals

The indicator light blinks when you use either turn signal.

Whenever you use the left or the right turn signal, the indicator light blinks. When you use the emergency flashers, both indicator lights flash.

If one of the turn signal light bulbs burn out, the turn signal will blink twice as fast as normal. Carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected. The indicator light does not indicate a malfunction if a turn signal on the trailer or on the vehicle fails in trailer towing mode.

Tips

For more information on the turn signals, refer to ⇨ *page 44*.

CRUISE / Cruise control

The warning/indicator light CRUISE (USA models)/ (Canada models) illuminates when the cruise control is activated ⇨ *page 83*.

Driver information system

Overview



Fig. 4 Driver information system in the instrument cluster



Fig. 5 Display: example of the information line

The driver information system contains information Ⓑ that is displayed on tabs Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 4*. The following content is possible depending on vehicle equipment:

Ⓐ Tab	Ⓑ Content
1	**Vehicle functions**:
	On-board computer ⇨ *page 24*
	Efficiency program* ⇨ *page 25*
	Digital speedometer
	Cruise control* ⇨ *page 83*
	Adaptive cruise control and braking guard* ⇨ *page 85*
	Audi active lane assist* ⇨ *page 94*
	Display darkened

Ⓐ Tab	Ⓑ Content
2	Indicator lights and messages
	Warning when a door, the hood or the rear lid is not closed
	Service interval display ⇨ *page 26*
	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 82*
3	Night vision assistant* ⇨ *page 104*
4	Audio/video
5	Telephone*
6	Navigation*

The second and third tabs are only visible if at least one indicator light or message is shown or if that system is switched on.

The status line Ⓒ is located in the bottom part of the display ⇨ *fig. 4*. It displays the exterior temperature, time, selector lever position, trip odometer and odometer.

For some vehicle functions, you can access the trip information from the temporary memory ⇨ *page 25* in the line 1 ⇨ *fig. 5*.

WARNING

- Never rely exclusively on the outside temperature display to determine if a road surface is icy or not. Keep in mind that road surfaces, especially bridges and overpasses, could be ice covered and slippery even at an outside temperature above 41 °F (+5 °C).
- Always remember, even if the “snowflake” symbol (ice warning) does not appear in the display, black ice could be on the road.
- Always reduce your speed and drive with special care in cold weather conditions when the chance of encountering icy road surfaces increases.

Tips

- If the vehicle is stationary, or if you are driving at a very low speed, the temperature shown in the display might be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature. This is caused by the heat being radiated from the engine.

– You can select the units used for temperature, speed and other measurements in the MMI.
– For information on the audio/video and navigation* functions, refer to the separate MMI owner's manual.

Operation

The driver information system is operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel.

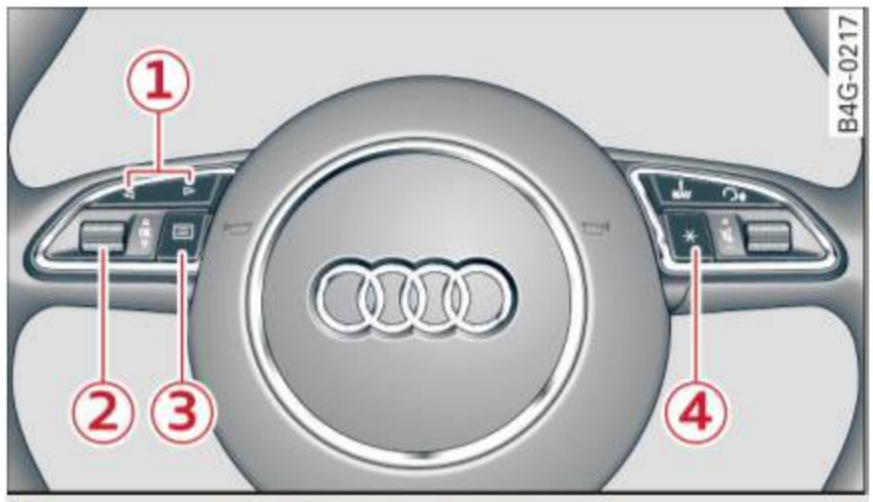


Fig. 6 Multifunction steering wheel: operating the driver information system



Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: calling up the vehicle functions menu

Operating

- Switch the ignition on.
- To switch between the tabs, press the rocker switch ① to the left or right ⇨ *fig. 6*.
- To access additional information below or above, turn the thumbwheel ② down or up.
- To confirm a selection, press the thumbwheel ②.
- To open the submenu for an active tab, press the button ③.
- To select a function programmed to a steering wheel button*, press the button ④.

Opening the Vehicle functions

- Select the first tab with the rocker switch ①.
- Press the button ③. The **Vehicle functions** menu is displayed ⇨ *fig. 7*.
- To select a menu item, turn and press the thumbwheel ②.

Resetting values to zero

- In the **Vehicle functions** menu, select **On-board computer** or **Efficiency program**.
- You can now select between the long-term memory and short-term memory.
- To reset the values in a memory, press and hold the thumbwheel ② for one second.

Assigning a function to a programmable steering wheel button*

- Select the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button programming**.

The last function selected displays when you switch the ignition on.

On-board computer



Fig. 8 Instrument cluster: fuel consumption

You can call up the following information in the on-board computer:

– Date
– Driving time (h) from the short-term memory
– Average consumption in MPG (l/100 km) from the short-term memory
– Average speed in mph (km/h) from the short-term memory
– Distance driven in miles (km) from the short-term memory
– Current fuel consumption in MPG (l/100 km) ▶

– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

For some vehicle functions, you can access the trip information from the temporary memory in the line (1).

Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be displayed using a bar ⇨ *fig. 8*. The average consumption (mpg) stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. When the bar turns green, your vehicle saves fuel by one of the following functions:

– **Recuperation**: When the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill, electrical energy can be stored in the battery. The bar will move toward .
– **Cylinder on demand System***: when the demand for power is low and other conditions are met, the engine automatically deactivates four cylinders. The driver and passengers will not even notice this. The cylinders switch on again when more power is needed.

Tips

Fuel consumptions (average and current), range and speed are displayed in metric units on Canadian models.

Efficiency program

Applies to vehicles: with efficiency program



Fig. 9 Instrument cluster: Other consumers

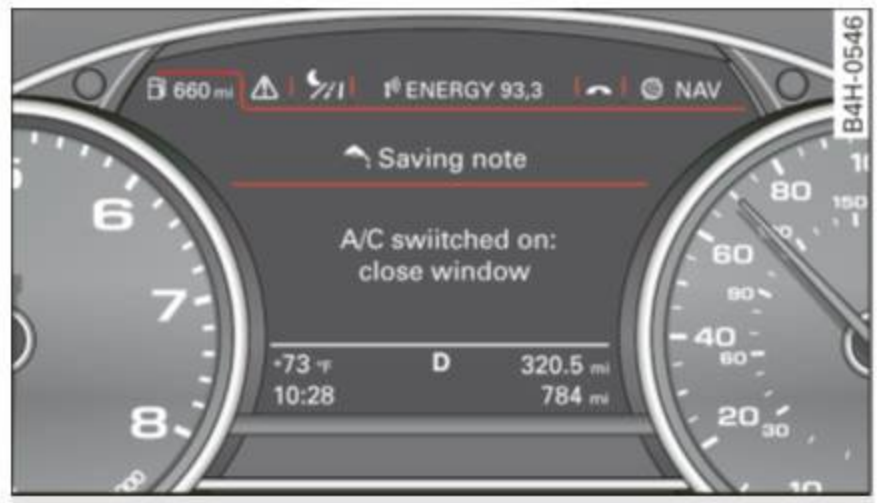


Fig. 10 Instrument cluster: economy tip

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel. It shows other consumers that are using fuel and economy tips give advice on how to drive efficiently. The efficiency program receives distance and consumption data from the on-board computer.

To display the efficiency program, open the **Vehicle functions** menu and select the **Efficiency program** menu item.

Other consumers

The **Energy usage** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three other consumers (B) ⇨ *fig. 9*. The equipment using the most fuel is listed first. If more than three items using fuel are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most fuel is displayed.

A scale (A) also shows the current total consumption of all other consumers. ▶

Economy tips

In certain situations, economy tips appear automatically for a short time in the efficiency program ⇨ *fig. 10*. If you follow these economy tips, you can reduce your vehicle's fuel consumption.

To turn an economy tip off immediately after it appears, press any button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Tips

- If you erase the data in the efficiency program, the values in the on-board computer will also be reset.
- Once you have turned an economy tip off, it will only appear again after you turn the ignition on again.
- The economy tips are not displayed in every instance, but rather in intervals over a period of time.

Odometer



Fig. 11 Instrument cluster: odometer and reset button

The display of distance driven is shown in miles "mi" or kilometers "km". The units of measurement (kilometers/miles) can be changed in the Infotainment system.

Upper odometer

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The last digit shows distances of 100 meters or 1/10 of a mile.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button ⟲.

Lower odometer

The lower odometer shows the total number of kilometers or miles that the vehicle has driven.

Malfunction indicator

If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.

Time/date display



Fig. 12 Instrument cluster: Time and date

The date, time of day and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system. Refer to the Infotainment system operating manual for instructions.

When you open the driver's door, the date and time appear in the instrument cluster display for 30 seconds.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.



Fig. 13 Instrument cluster display: service interval display (example)

The service interval display works in two stages: ▶

– **Inspection or oil change reminder:** After a certain distance driven, a message appears in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on or off ⇨ *fig. 13*. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** If your vehicle is due for an inspection or oil change or both, a message appears briefly in the instrument cluster display when switching the ignition on or off: **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!**.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection n the Car menu. To do this, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & control** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

Your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

To reset the indicator, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* System** control button > **Service & control** > **Service intervals**. Turn the control knob downward to **Reset oil change interval** and press the control knob.

Note

– Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
– Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.
– Calculating the time to the next oil change is interrupted when the vehicle battery is disconnected. If the vehicle is not driven for a long period of time, check the maintenance schedule so that you can follow the maintenance intervals.

Head-up display

Applies to vehicles: with Head-up display

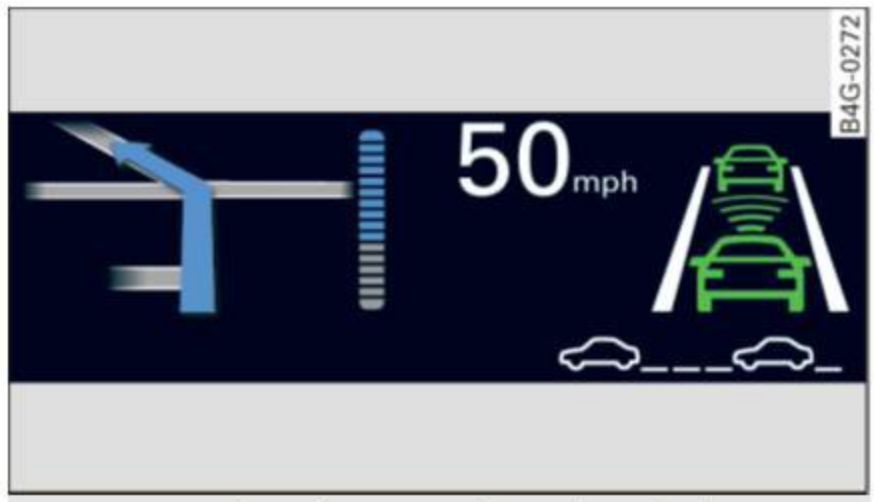


Fig. 14 Example: Indicators in the Head-up display



Fig. 15 Instrument panel: head-up display knob

The Head-up display projects certain warnings or selected information from the assistance systems* or navigation* on the windshield. The display appears within the driver's field of vision.

Switching on/off

▸ To switch the head-up display on or off, press the knob ⇨ *fig. 15*.

Adjusting the height

The height of the display can be adjusted to the individual driver.

▸ Make sure you are seated correctly ⇨ *page 127*.
▸ Turn the knob to adjust the display.

Settings in the Infotainment system

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* System** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Head-up display** > **Head-up display contents** or **Display brightness**. ▶

Display content

In the Infotainment system, you can specify which information should be displayed: For example, this can include navigation information*, Adaptive cruise control* or night vision assist*.

The display of certain information and some of the red indicator lights cannot be hidden in the Infotainment system.

Display brightness

You can adjust the display brightness in the Infotainment system. The display brightness decreases automatically as the amount of light decreases. The basic level of brightness is adjusted with the instrument illumination ⇨ *page 47*.

Note

To prevent scratches on the glass covering the Head-up display, do not place any objects in the projection opening.

Tips

– Sunglasses with polarization filters and unfavorable lighting conditions can affect the display.
– An optimum display depends on the seat position and the height adjustment of the head-up display.
– A special windshield is needed for the head-up display function.
– For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *table on page 207*.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) in the instrument cluster is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out after the engine starts and the idle has stabilized. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

If the light does not go out after the engine is started, or illuminates while you are driving, a malfunction may exist in the engine system. If the light illuminates, the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Continue driving **with reduced power** (avoiding sustained high speeds and/or rapid accelerations) and have the condition corrected. Contact your authorized Audi dealer.

If the light illuminates, the electronic speed limiter may also be malfunctioning. For more information ⇨ *page 29, Electronic speed limiter*.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate ⇨ *page 212*.

On-Board Diagnostics

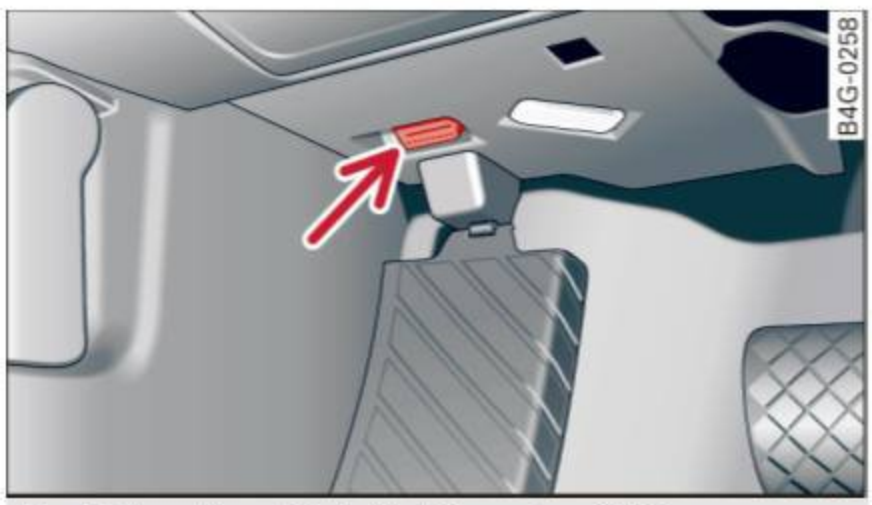


Fig. 16 Location of Data Link Connector (DLC)

On-Board Diagnostics monitors the components of your emission control system. Each monitored component in your engine system has been assigned a code. In case of a malfunction, the component will be identified and the fault stored as a code in the control module memory.

The MIL light may also illuminate if there is a leak in the on-board fuel vapor recovery system. If the light illuminates after a refuelling, stop the vehicle and make sure the fuel filler cap is properly closed ⇨ *page 212*.

In order to make an accurate diagnosis, the stored data can only be displayed using special diagnostic equipment (generic scan tool for OBD).

In order to connect the special diagnostic equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located to the right of the hood release ⇨ *fig. 16*. ▶

Your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station can interpret the code and perform the necessary repair.

WARNING

Do not use the diagnostic connector for personal use. Incorrect usage can cause malfunctions, which can increase the risk of a collision!

Electronic speed limiter

Your vehicle may be factory equipped with tires that are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control if the vehicle is operated at excessive speeds, your vehicle also has an electronic speed limiter. The electronic speed limiter prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. For more information ⇨ *page 240*.

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle road speed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

S models

Your vehicle's top speed is electronically limited to 155 mph (250 km/h).

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle roadspeed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

WARNING

Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed.

162.561.4GA.23

Opening and closing

Keys

Key set



Fig. 17 Key set

Ⓐ Remote control key with mechanical key

You can centrally lock and unlock your vehicle and start the engine with the master key with remote control. A mechanical key is integrated in the remote control key ⇨ *page 30*.

Ⓑ Emergency key

The emergency key is not intended for constant use. It should only be used in an emergency. Keep it in a safe place and do not carry it on your key ring.

Key replacement

If you lose a key, contact your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the *lost* key disabled. Be sure to bring all your keys with you.

Personal comfort settings

If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses "their own" master key. When the ignition is switched off or when the vehicle is locked, personal convenience settings for the following systems are stored and assigned to the remote master key.

– Automatic climate control
– Central locking system
– Ambience lighting*
– Seat memory*
– Parking system*
– Adaptive cruise control*
– Audi active lane assist*
– Audi side assist*
– Audi drive select
– Night vision assistant*
– Heated steering wheel*

The stored settings are automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle, when you open the doors or when you switch the ignition on.

WARNING

– Do not leave your vehicle unattended. Always take your ignition key with you and lock your vehicle. Entry by unauthorized persons could endanger you or result in theft or damage the vehicle.
– Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, especially with access to vehicle keys. Unguarded access to the keys provides children the opportunity to start the engine and/or activate vehicle systems such as the power windows, etc. Unsupervised operation of any vehicle system by children can result in serious injury.

Tips

– The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters in the vicinity of the vehicle working in the same frequency range (e.g. a cell phone, radio equipment).
– For security reasons, replacement keys are only available from Audi dealers.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 277*.

Removing the mechanical key

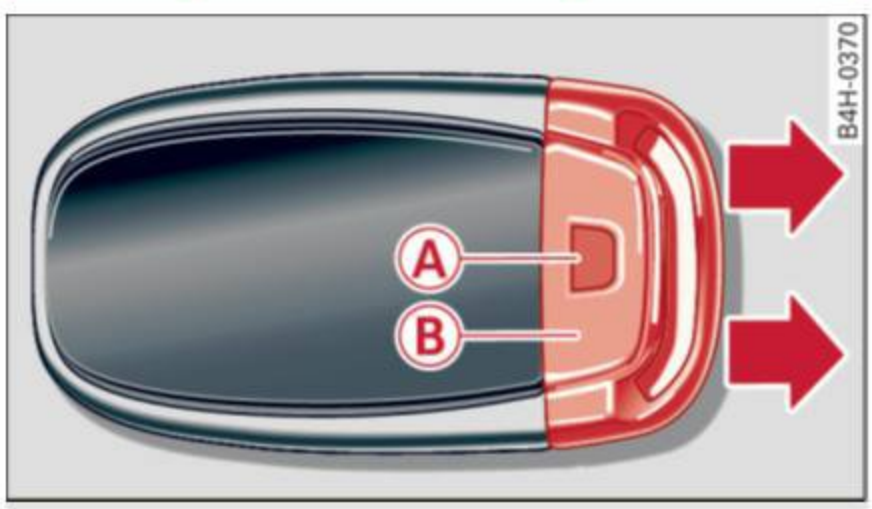


Fig. 18 Remote control master key: removing the mechanical key

- ▸ Press the release button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 18*.
- ▸ Pull the mechanical key Ⓑ out of the master key.

Using the mechanical key, you can:

– lock and unlock the storage compartment on the passenger's side ⇨ *page 60*.
– lock and unlock the vehicle manually ⇨ *page 35*.
– lock the front and rear passenger doors mechanically ⇨ *page 36*.

LED and batteries in the remote control key

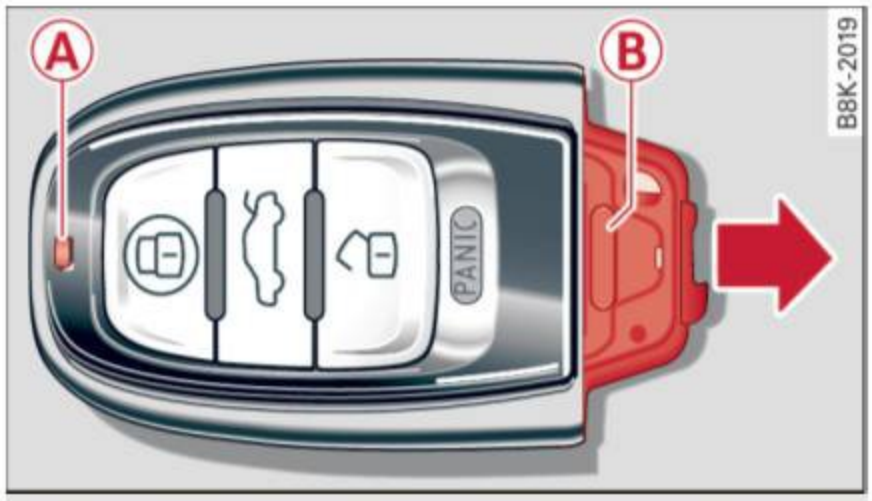


Fig. 19 Remote control key: Removing the battery holder

LED in the remote control key

The LED Ⓐ informs you about the function of the remote control key.

- ▸ If you press a button quickly, the LED blinks once.
- ▸ If you press a button longer (convenience opening), the LED blinks several times.
- ▸ If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is dead. The indicator light and the message **Please change key battery** appear. Replace the battery.

Replacing the remote control key battery

- ▸ Remove the emergency key ⇨ *page 30*.
- ▸ Press the release button Ⓥ on the battery holder and pull the battery holder out of the master key in the direction of the arrow at the same time.
- ▸ Insert the new battery with the "+" facing down.
- ▸ Push the battery holder carefully into the master key.
- ▸ Install the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Dead batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

The replacement battery must meet the same specifications as the original battery.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer helps to prevent unauthorized use of your vehicle.

A computer chip inside your key automatically deactivates the electronic immobilizer when the key is inside the vehicle. When you remove the key from the vehicle, the electronic immobilizer is automatically activated once again.

WARNING

Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The key can disarm the electronic engine immobilizer and permit an unauthorized person to start the engine and enable operation of the vehicle systems such as power window or power sunroof leading to serious personal injury.

Tips

– The vehicle cannot be started if an unauthorized key is used. The vehicle may not start if another radio device such as a key for another vehicle or a transponder is located on the key ring.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 277*.

Central locking

General description

The power locking system locks or unlocks all doors and the rear lid simultaneously.

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following choices: ▸

– Remote master key ⇨ *page 33*,
– Door handles with convenience key* ⇨ *page 34*,
– Lock cylinder at the driver's door ⇨ *page 35*, or
– Power locking switch inside ⇨ *page 35*.

Selective unlocking

When you lock the vehicle, the power locking system will lock the doors and the rear lid. When unlocking, you can set in the MMI whether only the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked ⇨ *page 33*.

Automatic locking

The automatic locking feature locks all the vehicle doors and the rear lid when you drive faster than 9 mph (15 km/h).

The car is unlocked again, when the opening function in the power locking system switch or at one of the door levers is actuated. The Auto Lock function can be turned on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 33*.

Anti-theft alarm warning system

If the anti-theft alarm warning system detects a break-in into the vehicle, acoustic and visual warning signals are triggered.

The anti-theft warning system is activated automatically when you lock the vehicle. It is deactivated when unlocking using the remote key, with the mechanical key, and when you switch the ignition on.

The alarm also turns off when the alarm cycle has expired.

Turn signals

When you unlock the vehicle, the turn signals flash twice. When you lock the vehicle the turn signals flash once. If they do not flash, one of the doors, the rear lid or the hood is not locked.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

In the following cases there safeguards to prevent you locking your remote master key in the vehicle:

– The vehicle does not lock with the central locking switch ⇨ *page 35* if the driver's door is open.
– On vehicles with convenience key*, if the most recently used master key is in the luggage compartment, the rear lid is automatically unlocked again after it is closed.

Do not lock your vehicle with the **remote master key** or **convenience key*** until all doors and the rear lid are closed. In this way you avoid locking yourself out accidentally.

Power side door closer*

The vehicle doors are equipped with a power side door closer. When closing a door, you only have to let it fall lightly into the latch. The door will then automatically close by itself ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– When you lock your vehicle from outside, nobody - especially children - should remain inside the vehicle. Remember, when you lock the vehicle from the outside the windows cannot be opened from the inside.
– When you leave the vehicle, always take the ignition key with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the doors.
– Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.
– Applies to vehicles with power side door closer*:
  – When closing a door, make sure nothing can interfere with the door. This could cause serious personal injury.
  – You can stop the door from closing at any time by pulling on the inside or outside door handle.

Tips

– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment all locked doors will be automatically ▶

unlocked to give access to the vehicle occupants from the outside.
- If the power locking system should malfunction, you can lock the driver's door using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 36*.
- If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the fuel tank flap in an emergency ⇨ *page 214*.
- You are well advised not to keep valuables inside an unattended vehicle, visible or not. Even a properly locked vehicle cannot provide the security of a safe.
- If the LED in the upper edge of the driver's door panel comes on for about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, there is a malfunction in the power locking or the anti-theft warning system. Have the malfunction corrected by an authorized Audi dealership or qualified repair facility.

Setting central locking

In the Infotainment system, you can set which doors the central locking system will unlock.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Central locking***.

Door unlocking - You can decide if **All** doors or only the **Driver** should unlock. The luggage compartment lid also unlocks when **All** is selected. If you select **Driver** in a vehicle with a convenience key*, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock.

If you select **Driver**, all the doors and luggage compartment lid will unlock if you press the button on the remote control master key twice.

Disable tailgate handle - If you select **On**, the luggage compartment lid handle is locked. In this case the luggage compartment lid can be opened with the button on the master key or with the button* in the driver's door. In vehicles with a convenience key*, you can still open the luggage compartment lid using the handle if an authorized master key is near the proximity sensor*.

Fold mirrors when locking* - If you select **On**, the exterior rearview mirrors fold in automatically when you press the button on the remote control master key or touch the sensor* in the handle.

Lock when driving - If you select **On**, the vehicle locks automatically when driving. All of the doors and the luggage compartment lid lock.

Tone when locking - if you select **On**, a tone will sound when you lock the vehicle.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the remote control

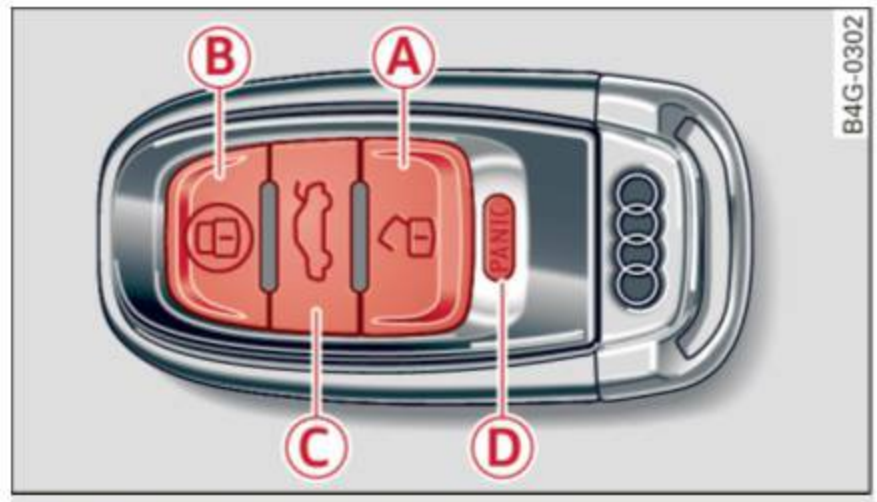


Fig. 20 Remote control: function buttons

Either the driver's door only or the entire vehicle will unlock when the unlock button (Ⓐ) is pressed once, depending on the settings in the MMI ⇨ *page 33*.

▸ Press button (Ⓐ) to unlock the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 20*.
▸ Press button (Ⓑ) to lock the vehicle ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 32*.
▸ Press button (Ⓒ) briefly to unlock the rear lid.
▸ Push the red PANIC button (Ⓓ) to activate the panic function. The horn sounds and the turn signals flash. Push the red PANIC button again to deactivate the panic function.

If the vehicle is unlocked and no door, the rear lid or the hood is opened within 60 seconds, the vehicle locks itself again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked over a long period of time. ▶

It depends on the settings in the MMI whether the entire vehicle is unlocked or only certain doors ⇨ *page 33*.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 32*.

Tips

– In order to make sure the locking function is working, you should always keep your eye on the vehicle to make sure it is properly locked.
– Do not use the remote control if you are inside the car, otherwise you may unintentionally lock the vehicle, and then you would set off the anti-theft alarm when you try to start the engine or open a door. In case this happens anyhow, push the unlock button 🔓.
– The vehicle can only be locked when the selector lever is in the P position.
– Use the panic function only if you are in an emergency situation.

Locking and unlocking with convenience key

Applies to vehicles: with convenience key

The doors and the rear lid can be unlocked and locked without operating the master key.

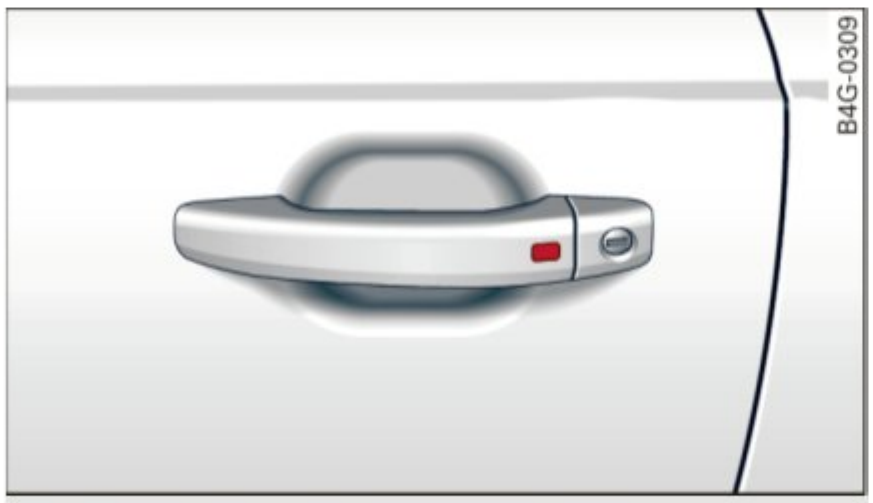


Fig. 21 Convenience key: Locking the vehicle

Unlocking vehicle

▸ Take hold of the door handle. The door is unlocked automatically.
▸ Pull the handle to open the door.

Locking vehicle

▸ Select the P selector lever position. Otherwise the vehicle cannot be locked.
▸ To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor in the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 21*. Do not reach inside the door handle.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked at any door. The master key must be within a range of about 1.5 m from the appropriate door or the rear lid. It makes no difference whether the master key is in your jacket pocket or in your brief case.

It is not possible to re-open the door for a brief period directly after closing it. This allows you to ensure that the doors are properly locked.

It depends on the settings in the MMI whether the entire vehicle is unlocked or one of the doors ⇨ *page 33*.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 32*.

Tips

If your vehicle has been standing for an extended period, please note the following:
– The proximity sensors are deactivated after a few days to save power. You then have to pull on the door handle once to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open the vehicle.
– To prevent the battery from being discharged and to preserve your vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible, the energy management system gradually switches off unnecessary convenience functions. It is possible that you will not be able to unlock your vehicle using these convenience functions.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 277*.

Operating locks with the key

In the event of a failure of the power locking system, the driver's door can be locked and unlocked at the lock cylinder.

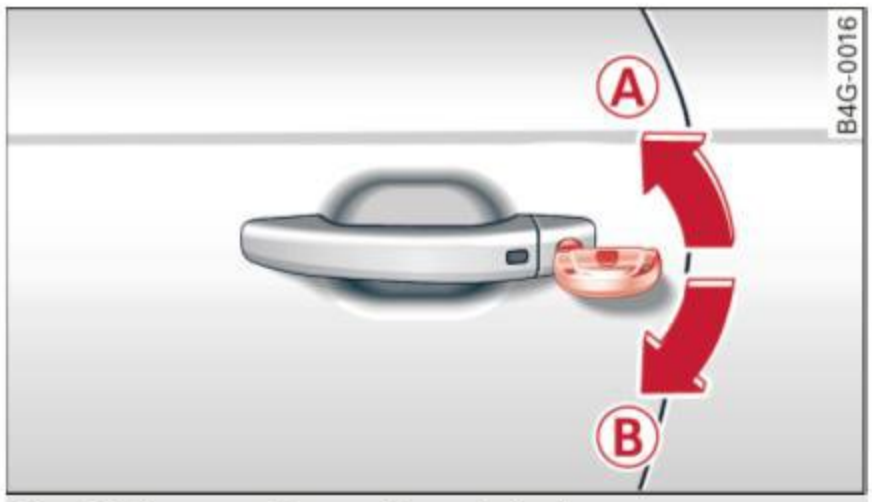


Fig. 22 Key turns for opening and closing.

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 30*.
- ▸ Turn the mechanical key to position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 22* to unlock the driver's door.
- ▸ Turn the key to position Ⓑ to lock the driver's door ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in General description on page 32*.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle from inside



Fig. 23 Driver's door: power locking switch



Fig. 24 Rear power locking switch

- ▸ Press the button 🔒 to lock the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press the button 🔓 to unlock the vehicle.

If you lock the vehicle using the power locking switch, please note the following:

– You cannot open the doors or the rear lid from the *outside* (increased security, for example when you are stopped at a red light).
– The diodes in the power locking switches illuminate when all the doors are closed and locked.
– Front doors: you can unlock and open the doors from the inside by pulling on the door handle.
– Rear doors: pull the door handle *once* to release the lock. Pull the handle *again* to open the door.
– If you have a crash and the airbag is activated, the doors automatically unlock.

⚠ WARNING

– The power locking switch works with the ignition off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when it is actuated.
– On a vehicle locked from the outside the power locking system switch is inoperative.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

Tips

Your vehicle is locked automatically at a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) ⇨ *page 31*. You can unlock the vehicle again using the opening function in the power locking system switch.

Emergency locking

Each door must be locked separately if the power locking system fails.



Fig. 25 Door: Emergency locking

An emergency lock is located on the front end of the passenger's door and the rear doors (only visible when door is open).

- ▸ Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 30*.
- ▸ Pull the cover cap out of the opening ⇨ *fig. 25*.
- ▸ Insert the key in the inside slot and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or left (left door).

Once the door has been closed, it can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle. If the child safety lock in a rear door is activated, you must first pull the door handle on the inside. Then you can open the door from the outside.

Luggage compartment lid

Automatic luggage compartment lid

The luggage compartment lid can be opened and closed automatically.



Fig. 26 Driver's door: Opening the luggage compartment lid



Fig. 27 Luggage compartment lid: Ⓐ closing button, Ⓑ lock button (vehicles with convenience key*)

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Press and hold the button on the remote control key for at least one second. Or
- ▸ Pull the button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 26* briefly. Or
- ▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Pull the button in the driver's door until the luggage compartment lid is closed ⇨ ⚠. Or
- ▸ Press the button in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 27*. The luggage compartment lid will automatically close and lock ⇨ ⚠. Or
- ▸ Press and hold the button on the master key until the luggage compartment lid is closed (vehicles with convenience key*) ⇨ ⚠. Make sure there is enough distance between you and ▶

the luggage compartment lid. There should be at least 9 ft (3 m) of distance. Or

- ▸ Press the button in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 27* (vehicles with convenience key*). The remote control key must not be more than approximately 4 ft (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment and it must not be inside the vehicle. The luggage compartment lid will automatically close and lock. The vehicle locks ⇨ ⚠. Or
- ▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. The luggage compartment lid will automatically close and lock ⇨ ⚠.

Setting the luggage compartment lid open position

- ▸ Bring the luggage compartment lid into the desired open position ⇨ (!). The position can be stored at only one specific height.
- ▸ Press and hold the button for at least four seconds to store the new open position. A visual and audio signal will follow.
- ▸ To set a higher open position, wait at least five seconds and then carefully press the luggage compartment lid upward.
- ▸ Press and hold the button again for at least four seconds and this will store the new open position.

The opening/closing process will stop immediately if:

– You pull the button in the driver's door, or
– You release the button on the remote control master key (vehicles with convenience key*), or
– You press the button or button (vehicles with convenience key*) in the luggage compartment lid, or
– You push the handle in the luggage compartment lid, or
– You press against the luggage compartment lid against the direction it is moving, or
– when something blocks the luggage compartment lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move.

If you press the handle or one of the or buttons (vehicles with convenience key*) now, the luggage compartment lid will either open or close, depending on what angle it was at.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 31, General description*.

– After closing the rear lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed. Otherwise it could open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.
– To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those which fit completely into the luggage area, because then the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the rear lid as well as the vehicle doors closed when not in use.
– Never close the rear lid inattentively or without checking first. Although the closing force of the rear lid is limited, you can still seriously injure yourself or others.
– Always ensure that no one is within range of the rear lid when it is moving, in particular close to the hinges and the upper and lower edges - fingers or hands can be pinched.
– Never try to interfere with the rear lid or help it when it is being opened or closed automatically.

(!) Note

The luggage compartment lid can bump into objects such as the garage ceiling when opening and become damaged.

(i) Tips

– The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the luggage compartment lid can be opened using the handle ⇨ *page 33*. ▸

– There are audio signals when closing the luggage compartment lid with the remote control key (vehicles with convenience key*) or with the button in the driver's door.
– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. When the luggage compartment lid is closed again, it locks automatically.
– You can close the luggage compartment lid using the master key (vehicles with convenience key*) up to a distance of approximately 9 ft (3 m).
– The luggage compartment lid can be operated by hand if the vehicle battery is low. It is necessary to use more force when doing this. Move the lid slowly to reduce the amount of force needed.

Luggage compartment with movement-activated opening

Applies to vehicles: with convenience key and sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid

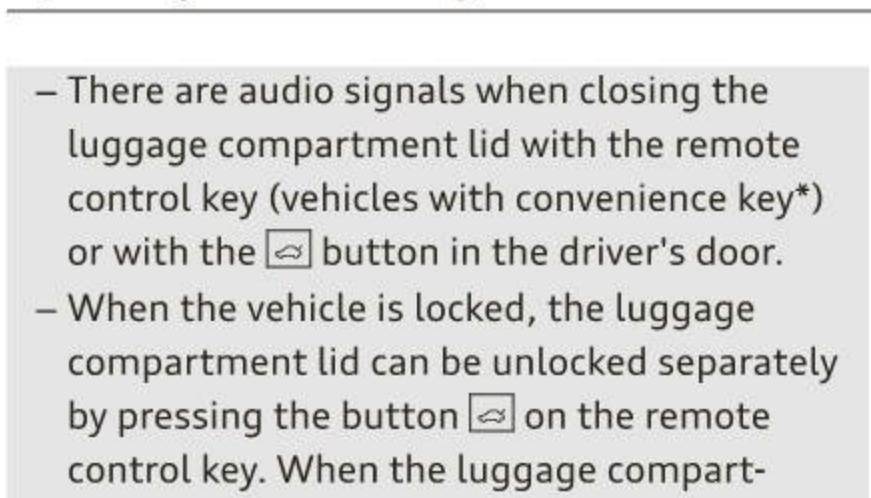


Fig. 28 Rear of the vehicle: foot movement

Requirements You must be carrying your vehicle key with you. You must be standing at the center behind the luggage compartment lid. There should be a distance of approximately 20 cm from the rear of the vehicle. The ignition must be switched off. Make sure you have firm footing.

▸ Swing your foot back and forth below the bumper ⇨ *fig. 28*. Do not touch the bumper. Once the system recognizes the movement, the luggage compartment lid will open.

The luggage compartment lid will only open if you make the movement as described. This prevents the luggage compartment lid from opening due to similar movements such as when you walk between the rear of the vehicle and your garage door.

General information

In some situations, the function is limited or temporarily unavailable. This may happen if:

– the luggage compartment lid was closed beforehand.
– you park close to a hedge and the branches move back and forth under the vehicle for a long period of time.
– you clean your vehicle, for example with a pressure washer or in a car wash.
– there is heavy rain.
– the bumper is very dirty, for example after driving on salt-covered roads.
– there is interference to the radio signal from the vehicle key, such as from cell phones or remote controls.

Luggage compartment lid emergency release

The luggage compartment lid can be released in an emergency from inside the luggage compartment.

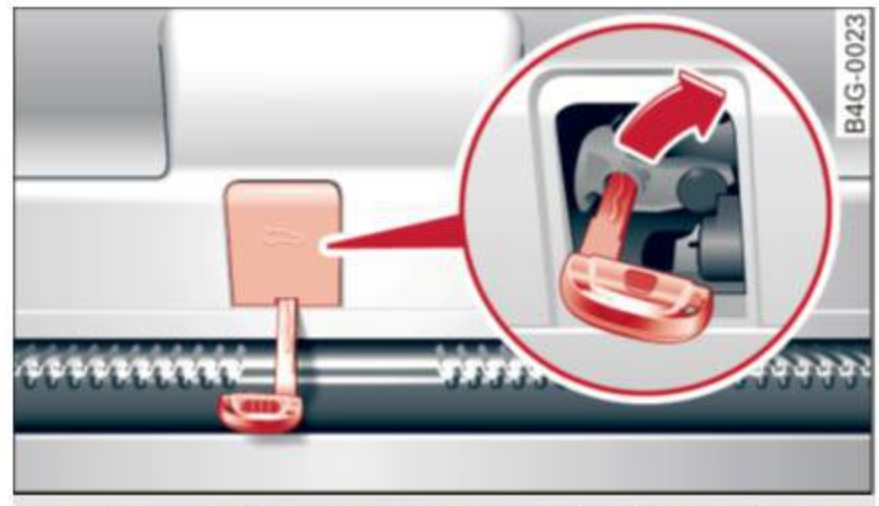


Fig. 29 Inside of the luggage compartment: access to the emergency release

▸ Remove the emergency key ⇨ *page 30*.
▸ Pry the cover out using the emergency key ⇨ *fig. 29*.
▸ Press the lever in the direction of the arrow to release the luggage compartment lid.

Child safety lock

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside and the rear windows from be operated.



Fig. 30 Section of the driver's door: Child safety lock buttons

- ▸ To activate the child safety lock for the respective rear door, press the left/right button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 30*. The LED in the button turns on.
- ▸ To deactivate the child safety lock for the respective rear door, press the left/right button in the driver's door . The LED in the button turns off.

The following features are switched off:

– Interior door handle in the respective rear door,
– Power window switch in the respective rear door.

To activate the child safety lock on both sides, you must press the buttons one after the other.

WARNING

Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise they could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.

Power Windows

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

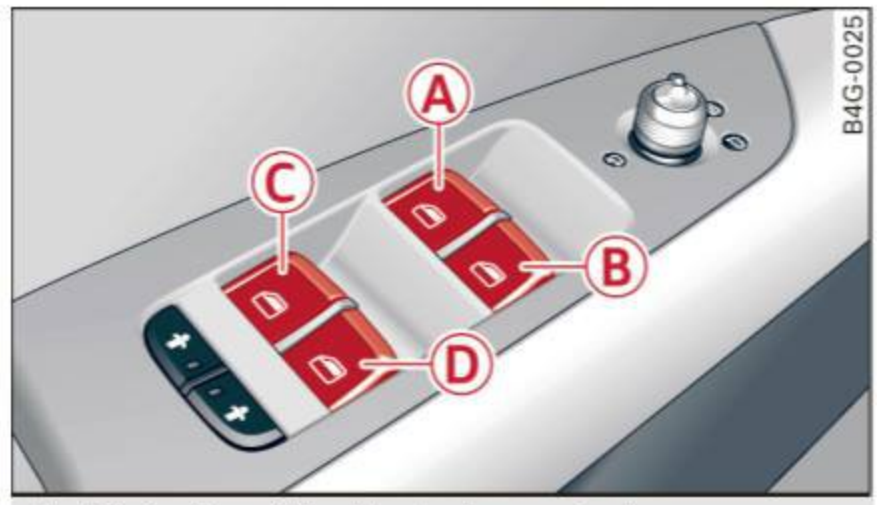


Fig. 31 Section of the driver's door: controls

All power window switches are equipped with a **two-stage function**:

Opening the windows

- ▸ Press the switch to the **first stop** and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.
- ▸ To open the window completely, press the switch down to the **second level** briefly.

Closing the windows

- ▸ Pull the switch to the **first stop** and hold it until the window reaches the desired position.
- ▸ To close the window completely, pull the switch up to the **second level** briefly.

Power window switches

Ⓐ Driver's door
Ⓑ Passenger's door
Ⓒ Left rear door
Ⓓ Right rear door

WARNING

– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise they could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows. The power windows continue to function until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened. ▶

– Pay careful attention when closing the windows. It could cause injury by pinching.
– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

– When you open the doors, the windows automatically lower about 0.4 inches (10 mm).
– When the window in the driver's or passenger's door is completely open, it will raise approximately 1 inch (25 mm) when the door is opened. The window will lower again when you close the door.
– After the ignition has been switched off, the windows can still be opened or closed for about 10 minutes. The power windows are not switched off until the driver's door or passenger's door has been opened.

Convenience opening

All of the windows and the sunroof can be opened at once.*

The settings in the Infotainment system specify which windows will open.

Convenience opening

▸ Press and hold the button on the remote control key until the windows reach their desired position and the sunroof* is tilted open.

Setting convenience opening in the Infotainment system

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Central locking** > **Long-press to open windows**.

To enable convenience opening of the windows and the roof*, the **Front windows**, **Rear windows** and **Roof** functions must be switched **On**.

WARNING

For security reasons, the windows and the sunroof* can only be opened with the remote control key at a maximum distance of approximately 6 feet (2 meters) from the vehicle.

Correcting power window malfunctions

After disconnecting the vehicle battery, the one-touch up and down feature must be activated again.

▸ Pull the power window switch until the window is completely raised.
▸ Release the switch and pull it again for at least one second.

Sunroof

Description

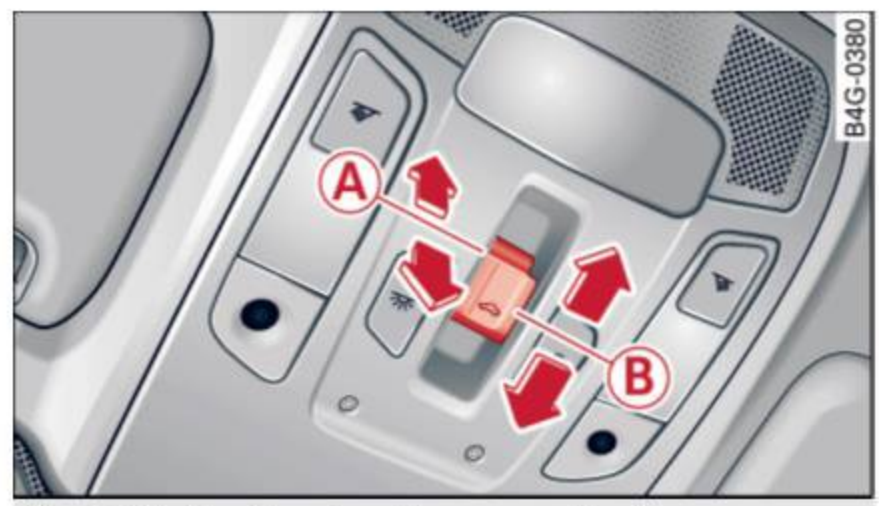


Fig. 32 Section from headliner: sunroof button

Ⓐ Tilting/sliding

▸ To tilt the sunroof completely, press the switch briefly to the second level.
▸ To open the sunroof completely, pull the switch briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first level until the desired position is reached.

Ⓑ Opening/sliding (version 1)

▸ To move the roof into the reduced wind noise position, press the button back briefly to the second level. The roof will open all the way if you press the button back to the second level again.
▸ To close the sunroof completely, press the switch forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch forward/back to the first level until the desired position is reached. ▶

Ⓑ Opening/sliding (version 2)

- ▸ To open the sunroof completely, press the switch back to just before the second level.
- ▸ To close the sunroof completely, press the switch forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch forward/back to the first level until the desired position is reached.

The sun shade can be opened and closed by hand when the roof is closed. The sun shade opens automatically when the roof is opened.

You can still operate the sliding/tilting sunroof for about 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off. The switch is deactivated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.

⚠ WARNING

Pay careful attention when closing the sliding/tilting sunroof - otherwise serious injury could result! Always take the ignition key with you when leaving the vehicle.

! Note

Always close your sliding/tilting sunroof when leaving your vehicle. Sudden rain can cause damage to the interior equipment of your vehicle, particularly the electronic equipment.

ⓘ Tips

- For information on convenience opening, refer to ⇨ *page 40*.
- The sunroof will only open down to -20 °C (-4 °F).

Sunroof power emergency closing

If the sunroof detects an object in its path when it is closing, it will open again automatically. In this case, you can close the roof with the power emergency closing function.

- ▸ Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the switch until the roof closes.

If you let go of the switch early, the sunroof will open again.

Garage door opener (HomeLink)

Description

Applies to vehicles: with garage door opener (HomeLink)



Fig. 33 Garage door opener: examples of using with different systems

You can activate various systems such as garage doors, security systems and home lighting from inside your vehicle using the garage door opener (HomeLink). There are three buttons for this in the vehicle headliner that can be in used in place of up to three hand-held transmitters.

To operate systems using the garage door opener, the three buttons in the roof headliner must be programmed first.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure no people or objects are in the immediate vicinity of the equipment when using or programming the garage door opener. People can be injured and objects can be damaged if they are caught in the equipment.

ⓘ Tips

- For security reasons, we recommend that you clear the programmed buttons before selling the vehicle.
- For additional information about HomeLink, visit www.homelink.com.
- For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 277*.

Programming buttons

Applies to vehicles: with garage door opener (Homelink)



Fig. 34 Headliner: Control panel

You can program both fixed code and rolling code systems using this procedure.

Programming/reprogramming buttons

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press and hold the button in the headliner that you would like to program for at least 10 seconds. Or
- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **garage door opener** > **Program garage door opener**.
- ▸ Follow the instructions in the Infotainment system.

Deleting button programming

The programmed buttons cannot be deleted individually, they must be deleted all at once. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

- ▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Clear program settings** > **Yes**.

Displaying the version/status/country code

- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Version information**.

Tips

The garage door opener may need to be synchronized with the system motor after the programming. Follow the manufacturers instructions for doing this.

Operation

Applies to vehicles: with garage door opener (Homelink)

Requirements The button in the roof headliner must be programmed ⇨ *page 42* and the vehicle must be within range of the system, such as the garage door.

- ▸ Press the button to open the garage door. The LED Ⓐ ⇨ *page 42, fig. 34* blinks or turns on.
- ▸ Press the button again to open the garage door.

Tips

To open or close the garage door, do not press the button longer ten seconds or the garage door opener will switch to programming mode.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching the lights on and off



Fig. 35 Instrument panel: light switch with all weather lights

Light switch

Turn the switch to the corresponding position. When the lights are switched on, the symbol turns on.

O - The lights are off or the daytime running lights are on:

- **USA models:** The daytime running lights will come on automatically when the ignition is on and the light switch ⇨ *fig. 35* is in the **O** position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions). The **Daytime running lights** function can be turned on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 45*, ⇨ ⚠.
- **Canada models:** The daytime running lights will come on automatically when the ignition is on and the light switch ⇨ *fig. 35* is in the **O** position, the position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions) ⇨ ⚠.

AUTO - Automatic headlights switch on and off depending on brightness, for example in twilight, during rain or in tunnels.

- Parking light

- Low beam headlight

- All weather lights

- Rear fog lights

All-weather lights

The front lights are adjusted automatically so that there is less glare for the driver from his or her own lights, for example when roads are wet.

Automatic dynamic headlight range control system

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control system so that the headlights do not blind oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range also adjusts automatically when braking and accelerating.

Static cornering light*

The static cornering light depends on equipment and only works when the light switch is in the AUTO position. The cornering light switches on automatically at speeds up to approximately 44 mph (70 km) when the steering wheel is at a certain angle. The area to the side of the vehicle is illuminated better when turning.

WARNING

- Automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually according to the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beam under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark .
- The rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulations, to prevent glare for traffic behind your vehicle.
- Please observe legal regulations when using the lighting systems described.

Tips

- The light sensor for the automatic headlights is in the rearview mirror mount. Therefore, do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.
- Some functions of the exterior lighting can be adjusted ⇨ *page 45*.
- If you turn off the ignition while the exterior lights are on and open the door, you will hear a warning tone. ▶

– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

Turn signals and high beam lever

The lever on the left side of the steering column is used to operate the turn signals and the high beam as well as the headlight flasher.

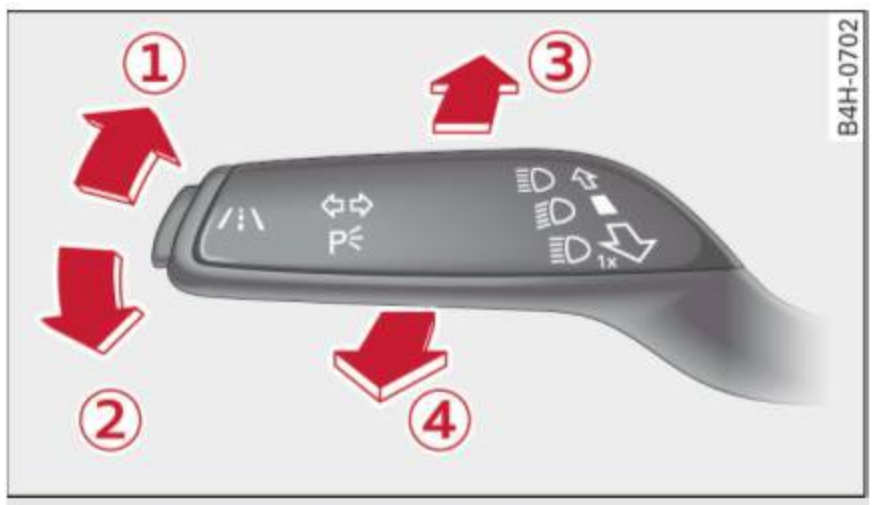


Fig. 36 Turn signal and high beam lever

The turn signal and high beam lever has the following functions:

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨ ① ②

- ▸ Push the lever up as far as it can go to turn on the right turn signal or down to turn on the left turn signal ⇨ *fig. 36*.
- ▸ Move the lever briefly until you meet resistance and release it to flash three times.
- ▸ Move the lever (up or down) until you meet resistance and hold it there to determine the flashing time for the turn signals.

High beam ③

- ▸ Push the lever forward to switch on the high beam (vehicles with high beam assist* ⇨ *page 44*).
- ▸ Pull the lever back towards you to switch off the high beam.

Headlight flasher ④

- ▸ Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to use the headlight flasher.

Notes on these features

– The *turn signals* only work with the ignition switched on. The indicator lights ⇦ or ⇨ in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 11* also blink.
– After you have turned a corner, the turn signal switches off automatically.
– The *high beam* works only when the headlights are on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high beams are on.
– The *headlight flasher* works only as long as you hold the lever - even if there are no lights turned on. The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when you use the headlight flasher.

WARNING

Do not use the high beam or headlight flasher if you know that these could blind oncoming traffic.

High beam assist

Applies to vehicles: with high beam assist

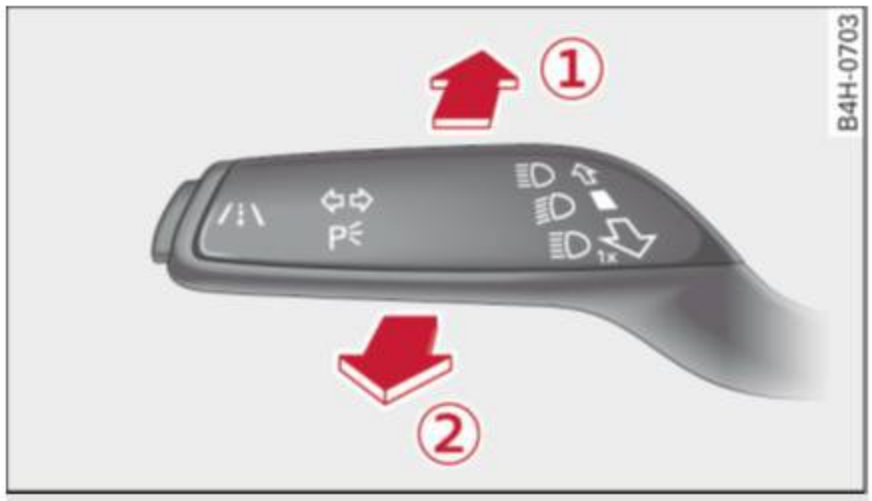


Fig. 37 Turn signal and high beam lever: switching high beam assist on/off

A camera on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams switch on or off automatically depending on the position of vehicles driving ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed and other environmental and traffic conditions.

Activating high beam assist

Requirement: The AUTO light switch position must be selected and the high beam assist must be switched on in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 45*.

▸ To activate the high beam assist, tap the lever forward (1). The indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the high beam assist is switched on/off automatically. The indicator light also turns on if the high beams are switched on.

Switching the high beams on/off manually

If the high beams did not switch on/off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

▸ To switch the high beams on manually, tap the lever forward (1). The indicator light turns on.

▸ To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back (2). The high beam assist is deactivated.

Operating the headlight flasher

▸ To operate the headlight flasher when the high beam assist is activated and high beams are switched off, pull the lever back (2). The high beam assist remains active.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Audi adaptive light: system fault!

High beam assist: System fault

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. You can still switch the high beams on or off manually.

High beam assist: Unavailable No camera view

The camera view is blocked, for example by a sticker or debris.

The sensor is located between the interior rear-view mirror and the windshield. Therefore, do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.

WARNING

High beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and switching them manually depending on light and visibility conditions. It may be necessary to operate them manually in situations such as:

- In adverse weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain, blowing snow or spraying water.
- On roads where oncoming traffic may be partially obscured, such as expressways.
- When there are road users that do not have sufficient lighting, such as bicyclers or vehicles with dirty tail lamps.
- In tight curves and on steep slopes.
- In poorly lit areas.
- With strong reflectors, such as signs.
- If the area of the windshield near the sensor is fogged over, dirty, icy or covered with a sticker.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

The settings are adjusted in the MMI.

▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Headlights activation time - You can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Med.** or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Audi adaptive light* - You can switch adaptive light **On** and **Off**.

Automatic high beams*

You can switch the high beam assist **on** and **off**.

Daytime running lights

USA models: You can switch the daytime running lights **on** and **off**.

Canada models: The function cannot be turned off. It is activated automatically each time the ignition is switched on. This menu item is shown "greyed out".

Coming home, Leaving home

The coming home function illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you switch the ignition off and open the driver's door. To turn the function on, select **Lights when leaving car** > **On**. ▶

The leaving home function illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you unlock the vehicle. To turn the function on, select **Lights when unlocking car** > **On**.

The coming home and leaving home functions only operate when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Emergency flasher

The emergency flasher makes other motorists aware that you or your vehicle are in an emergency situation.



Fig. 38 Center console: emergency flasher switch

▸ Press the switch ⚠ ⇨ *fig. 38* to turn the emergency flashers on or off.

When the emergency flasher is on, all four turn signals blink at the same time. The turn signal indicator lights ⇦ ⇨ in the instrument cluster, as well as the light in the emergency flasher switch ⚠ blink likewise. The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

The emergency flashers will turn on automatically if you are in an accident where the airbag has deployed.

Tips

You should turn on the emergency flashers when:

– you are the last vehicle standing in a traffic jam so that any other vehicles coming can see you, or when

– your vehicle has broken down or you are in an emergency situation, or when

– your vehicle is being towed by a tow truck or if you are towing another vehicle behind you.

Interior lighting

Front and rear interior lighting



Fig. 39 Front headliner: interior lighting controls



Fig. 40 Rear headliner: reading light

Press the corresponding button ⇨ *fig. 39*:

- Interior lighting on/off

- Door contact switch on/off. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

- Reading lights on/off

* - Switching the rear reading lights on/off from the cockpit.

Ambient lighting

Applies to vehicles: with ambient lighting

You can adjust the brightness of the interior lighting.

▸ In the Infotainment system, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting** > **Brightness**. ▶

▸ To increase or reduce the brightness, turn the knob and press it.

The interior lighting turns on when you switch the headlights on while the ignition is on.

Tips

The setting is automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

Instrument illumination

The brightness of the illumination for the instruments, display and head-up display can be adjusted.*



Fig. 41 Instrument illumination

▸ Press the knob to release it.
▸ Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
▸ Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Tips

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is turned on and the lights are turned off. The illumination for the dials reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the headlights on at the appropriate time.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 42 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the desired position:

/ - Adjusting the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heating the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folding exterior mirrors*. In the Infotainment system, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 33*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's outside mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or switch the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved (i. e. convex) mirror surfaces increase your field of view. Remember that vehicles or other objects will appear smaller and farther away than when seen in a flat mirror. If you ▸

use this mirror to estimate distances of following vehicles when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause an accident.

Note

– If the mirror housing was moved by force (for example, by running into an object when maneuvering the vehicle), the mirror must be folded all the way in using the power folding function. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this would impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors* by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

Tips

– If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.
– The exterior mirror settings are stored with the memory function* ⇨ *page 56*.

Dimming the mirrors

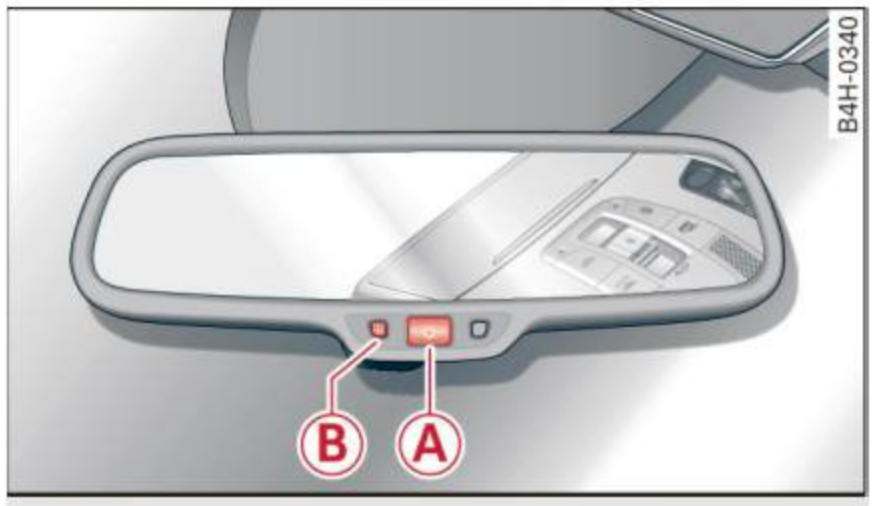


Fig. 43 Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

Manual anti-glare adjustment

▸ Move the small lever (located on the bottom edge of the mirror) to the rear.

Automatically dimming mirrors*

▸ To dim the rearview mirror and both exterior mirrors, press the Ⓐ button. The diode Ⓑ turns on. The rearview and exterior mirrors dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle to the rear.

WARNING

Electrolyte fluid can leak from automatic dimming mirrors if the glass is broken. Electrolyte fluid can irritate skin, eyes and respiratory system.

– Repeated or prolonged exposure to electrolyte can cause irritation to the respiratory system, especially among people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Get fresh air immediately by leaving the vehicle or, if that is not possible, open windows and doors all the way.
– If electrolyte gets into the eyes, flush them thoroughly with large amounts of clean water for at least 15 minutes; medical attention is recommended.
– If electrolyte contacts skin, flush affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash affected area with soap and water; medical attention is recommended. Thoroughly wash affected clothing and shoes before reuse.
– If swallowed and person is conscious, rinse mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by medical professional. Get medical attention immediately.

Note

Liquid electrolyte leaking from broken mirror glass will damage any plastic surfaces it comes in contact with. Clean up spilled electrolyte immediately with clean water and a sponge.

Tips

– Switching off the dimming function of the inside rear view mirror also deactivates the automatic dimming function of the exterior mirrors. ▶

– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.
– Automatic dimming for the mirror only operates properly if the light striking the inside mirror is not hindered in any way.

Sun visors



Fig. 44 Front passenger's side: sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and passenger can be released from their brackets and turned toward the doors ①.

The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror ② opens.

Sun shade

Applies to vehicles: with sun shade

The sun shade is located on the luggage compartment shelf.

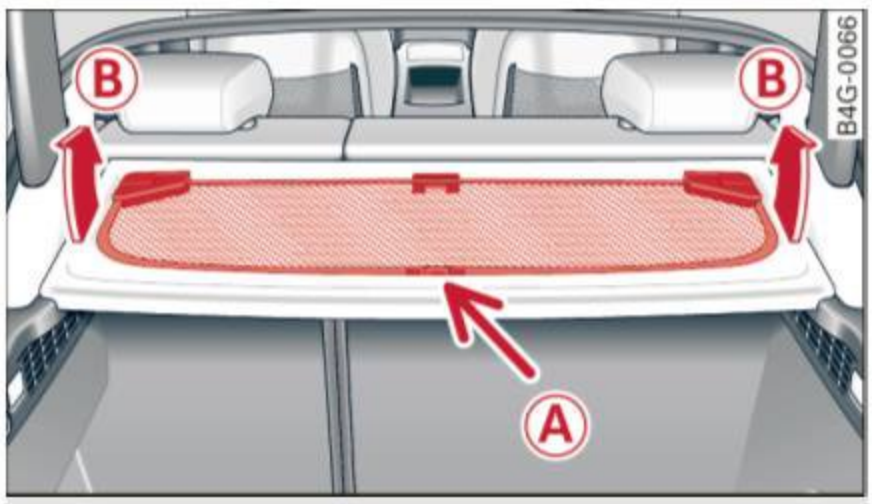


Fig. 45 Sun shade in lowered position

When the sun shade is in the lowered position, it is secured in the retainer Ⓐ.

▸ To raise Ⓑ the sun shade, remove it from the retainer.

WARNING

Do not use the sun shade to secure cargo. The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover could endanger all vehicle occupants during sudden braking maneuvers or in a crash.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

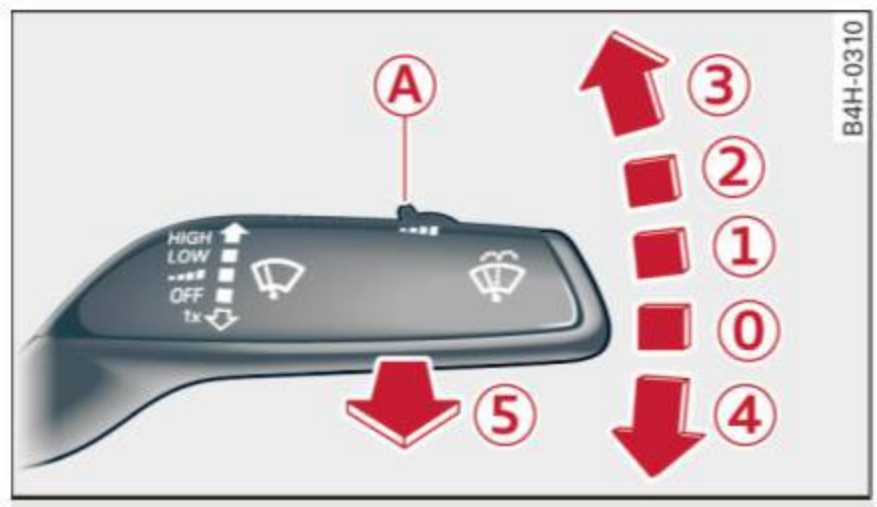


Fig. 46 Windshield wiper lever

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - Windshield wipers off

① - Rain sensor mode. The windshield wipers switch on once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h) and it is raining. The higher the rain sensor sensitivity is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate rain sensor mode in the MMI, which will then activate intermittent mode. Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Rain sensor** > **Off**. In intermittent mode, you can adjust the interval time using the switch Ⓐ.

② - Slow wiping

③ - Fast wiping

④ - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - Clean the windshield. The wipers wipe one time after several seconds of driving to remove water droplets. You can switch this function off ▶

by moving the lever to position (5) within 10 seconds after the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Cleaning the headlights*. The headlight washer system* operates only when the low beam headlights are on. If you move the lever to position (5), the headlights and the night vision assist camera* are washed in intervals.

WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for manually switching the wipers on according to the visibility conditions.
- The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness or low sun, can result in increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
- Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 50, Replacing windshield wiper blades*.

Note

- If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
- Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position 0). This prevents unintentional switching on and damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

- The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is turned off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched back on by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
- The washer fluid nozzles of the windshield washer system are heated at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
- When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Use a soft cloth and a glass cleaner.

- ▸ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 50*.
- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arms away from the windshield.

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Replacing windshield wiper blades

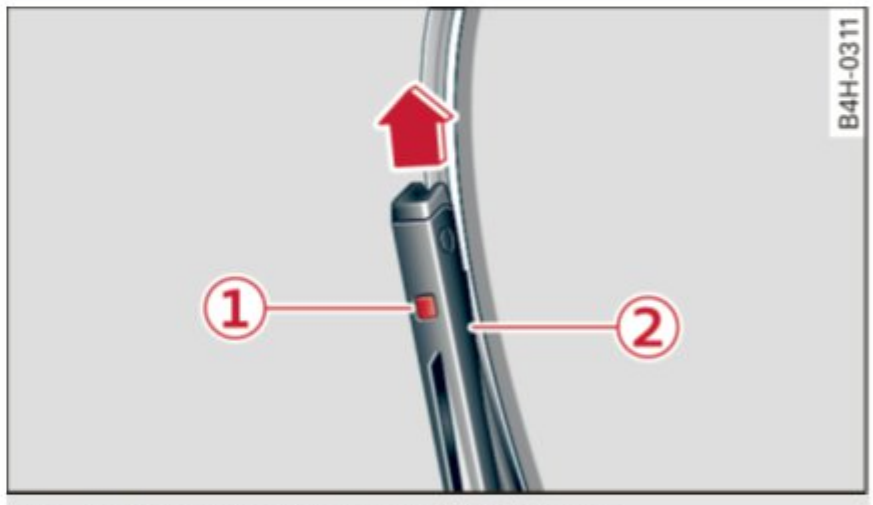


Fig. 47 Removing windshield wiper blades

Wiper service position/blade replacement position

- ▸ Switch the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever to position (4) briefly ⇨ *page 49, fig. 46*. The windshield wipers move into the service position.
- ▸ To bring the wiper blades back into the original position, switch the ignition on and operate the windshield wiper lever.

You can also turn the service position on or off in the Infotainment system: ▸

- ▸ Switch the windshield wipers off (position ⓪ ⇨ *page 49, fig. 46*).
- ▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & control** > **Wiper change position** > **On/Off**.

Removing the wiper blade

- ▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- ▸ Press the locking knob ① ⇨ *fig. 47* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- ▸ Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wiper blade

- ▸ Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm ② until you hear it latch into place.
- ▸ Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- ▸ Turn the service position off.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Note

– Only fold the windshield wipers away when it is in the service position. Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.

– You should not move your vehicle or operate the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.

– You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Seats and storage

General information

Why is your seat adjustment so important?

The safety belts and the airbag system can only provide maximum protection if the front seats are correctly adjusted.

There are various ways of adjusting the front seats to provide safe and comfortable support for the driver and the front passenger. Adjust your seat properly so that:

– you can easily and quickly reach all the switches and controls in the instrument panel
– your body is properly supported thus reducing physical stress and fatigue
– the safety belts and airbag system can offer maximum protection ⇨ *page 143*.

In the following sections, you will see exactly how you can best adjust your seats.

There are special regulations and instructions for installing a child seat on the front passenger's seat. Always follow the information regarding child safety provided in ⇨ *page 167, Child safety*.

WARNING

Incorrect seating position of the driver and all other passengers can result in serious personal injury.

– Always keep your feet on the floor when the vehicle is in motion — never put your feet on top of the instrument panel, out of the window or on top of the seat cushion. This applies especially to the passengers. If your seating position is incorrect, you increase the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or an accident. If the airbag inflates and the seating position is incorrect, this could result in personal injury or even death.
– It is important for both the driver and front passenger to keep a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between themselves and the steering wheel and/or instrument panel. If you're sitting any closer than this, the airbag system cannot protect you properly. In addition, the front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to your body height so that they can give you maximum protection.
– Always try to keep as much distance as possible between yourself and the steering wheel or instrument panel.
– Do not adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly, causing sudden loss of vehicle control and personal injury. If you adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving, you are out of position.

Driver's seat

The correct seat position is important for safe and relaxed driving.

We recommend that you adjust the driver's seat in the following manner:

▸ Adjust the seat in fore and aft direction so that you can easily push the pedals to the floor while keeping your knees slightly bent ⇨ ⚠ *in Why is your seat adjustment so important? on page 52*.
▸ Adjust the backrest so that when you sit with your back against the backrest, you can still grasp the top of the steering wheel.
▸ For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 55*. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.

WARNING

Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate.

Front passenger's seat

Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position.

To avoid contact with the airbag while it is deploying, do not sit any closer to the instrument panel than necessary and always wear the three-point safety belt provided adjusted correctly. We recommend that you adjust the passenger's seat in the following manner:

- Bring the backrest up to an (almost) upright position. **Do not** ride with the seat reclined.
- For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 55*. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- Place your feet on the floor in front of the passenger's seat.

Front seats

Controls

Moving the seat forward or back and adjusting the height, backrest angle and seat angle.

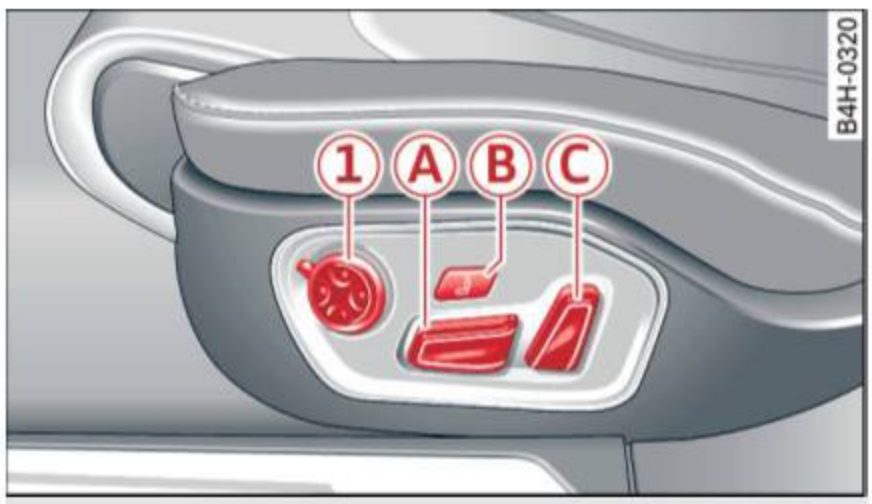


Fig. 48 Front seat: adjusting the seat

Ⓐ - Moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back ⇨ ⚠.

Ⓐ - Moving the seat up/down: press the button up/down ⇨ ⚠. To adjust the front section of the seat, press the front button up/down ⇨ ⚠. To adjust the rear section of the seat, press the rear button up/down ⇨ ⚠.

Ⓑ - Turn the massage function* on/off. You can select the type of massage using the multifunction button ⇨ *page 54*.

Ⓒ - Backrest forward/back: press the button forward/back ⇨ ⚠.

① - Lumbar support*: press the button in the corresponding position ⇨ ⚠ or multifunction button* ⇨ ⚠, ⇨ *page 54*.

⚠ WARNING

- Never adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. If you do this while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat when the vehicle is not moving.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!
- Because the seats can be electrically adjusted with the ignition off, never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments may cause serious injury.
- To reduce the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or accident, front passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. Safety belts and the airbag system only offer maximum protection when the backrest is upright and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the backrest is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an incorrect seating position and improperly positioned safety belts.

Multifunction button

Applies to vehicles: with memory function

You can adjust the massage function, lumbar support, side bolsters and seating surface using the multifunction button.

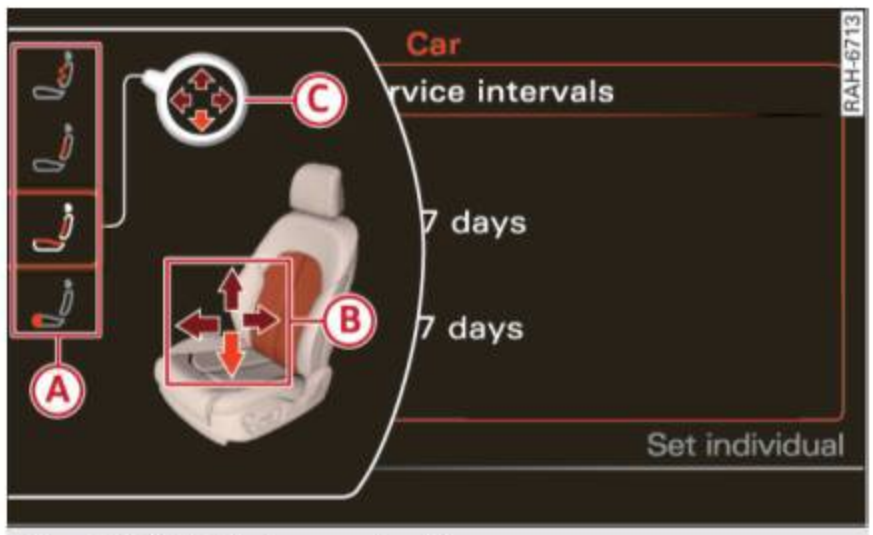


Fig. 49 MMI display: seat settings

Operating

- The MMI displays the possible seat settings Ⓐ when you turn the multifunction button ① ⇨ *page 53, fig. 48* to the left or right ⇨ *fig. 49*, ⇨ ⚠.
- To select a seat setting, turn the multifunction button ① until the desired seat setting is highlighted with a red border.
- The arrows Ⓑ indicate the possible adjustments. For example, to move the lumbar support down, press the multifunction button ① down. The corresponding arrow Ⓒ lights up.

The following seat settings Ⓐ are possible:

Massage function* - Massage type **Wave, Knocking, Stretch, Lumbar**, **Shoulder** or **Off**. You can set the massage strength level from 1 to 5. You can turn the selected massage on/off using the button Ⓑ ⇨ *page 53, fig. 48*.

Lumbar support - Moving the lumbar support up/down and making it firmer/softer ⇨ ⚠.

Side bolsters* - Increasing/reducing the side support in the seat using the side bolsters on the seating surface and backrest ⇨ ⚠.

Seating surface - Making the seating surface longer/shorter ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- Never adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat while the vehicle is moving. If you do this while the vehicle is moving, you will be out of position. Always adjust the driver's or front passenger's seat when the vehicle is not moving.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat height. Check to see that no one is in the way, or serious injury could result!
- Because the seats can be electrically adjusted with the ignition off, never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Unsupervised use of the electric seat adjustments may cause serious injury.
- To reduce the risk of injury in the case of sudden braking or accident, front passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. Safety belts and the airbag system only offer maximum protection when the backrest is upright and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the backrest is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an incorrect seating position and improperly positioned safety belts.

Tips

- The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.
- The side bolsters* deflate when the driver's door is opened. This allows you to enter and exit comfortably. The side bolsters inflate again once you begin driving.

Armrest

There is a storage compartment under the armrest.



Fig. 50 Cockpit: center armrest

Adjusting the armrest

- ▸ To adjust the angle, raise the armrest from the starting position detent by detent.
- ▸ To bring the armrest back into its original position, lift it above the top position and then fold it back down.

Opening the storage compartment

- ▸ Press the button -arrow- upward.

Please note that the driver's arm movements may be restricted with the armrest folded down. For this reason, the armrest should not be folded down when driving in city traffic.

Head restraints

Front head restraints

Applies to vehicles: with adjustable head restraints

Head restraints that are adjusted according to body size, along with the seat belt, offer effective protection.

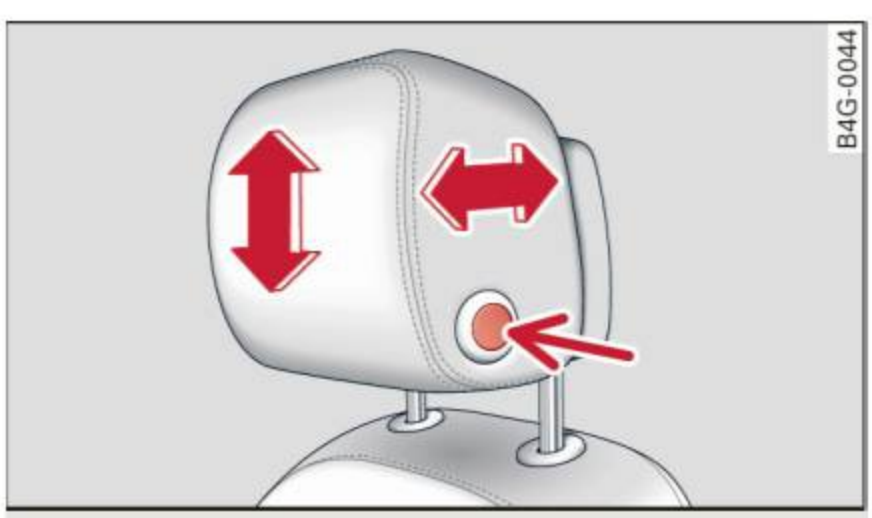


Fig. 51 Front seat: Adjusting the head restraint

Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.

- ▸ To move the head restraint up or forward, slide it until it locks into place.
- ▸ To move the head restraint down or back, press the side button -arrow- ⇨ *fig. 51* and slide the head restraint until it locks into place.

Refer to ⇨ *page 129, Proper adjustment of head restraints* for guidelines on how to adjust the height of the front head restraints to suit the occupant's body size.

WARNING

- – Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- – Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 129, Proper adjustment of head restraints*.

Tips

Correctly adjusted head restraints and safety belts are an extremely effective combination of safety features.

Rear head restraints

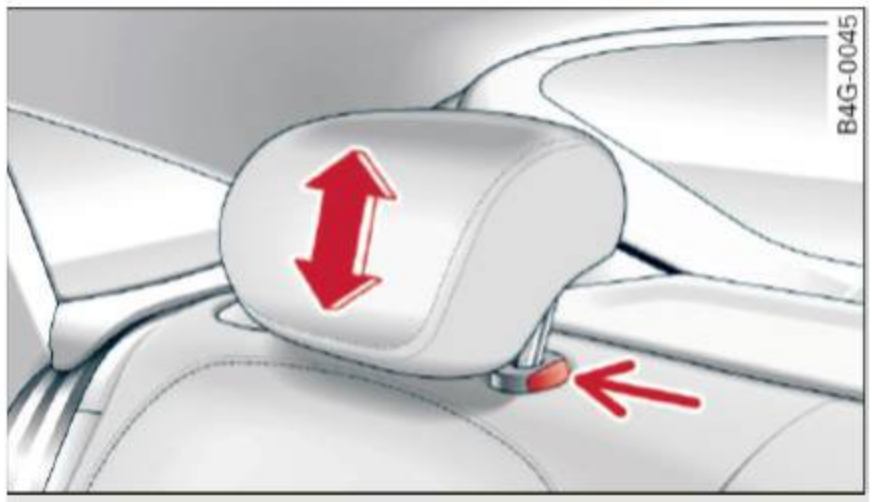


Fig. 52 Rear seats: Head restraint

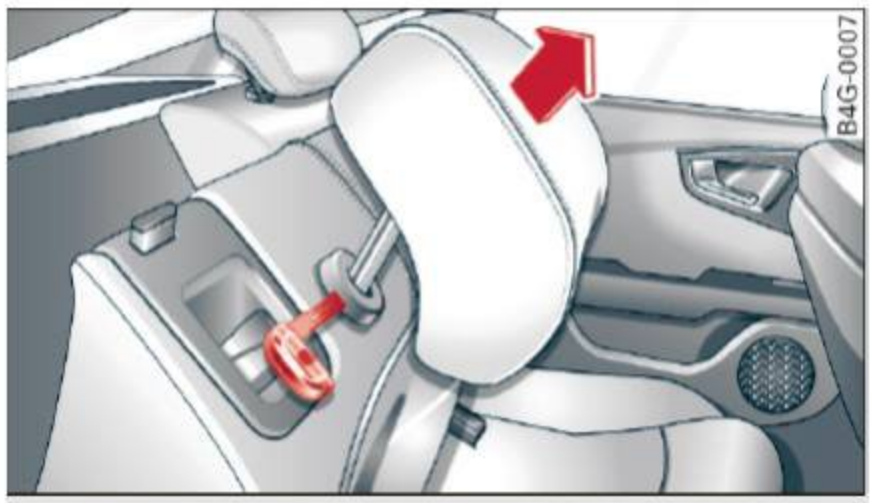


Fig. 53 Rear head restraints: release

If there is a passenger in the rear center seating position*, slide the center head restraint* upward at least to the next notch ⇨ ⚠.

Adjusting the head restraints

- ▸ To move the head restraint up, hold it at the sides with both hands and slide it upward until you feel it lock into place ⇨ ⚠ *in Proper adjustment of head restraints on page 130*.
- ▸ To move the head restraint down, press the button -arrow- ⇨ *fig. 52* and slide the head restraint downward.

Removing the head restraints

- ▸ Fold the backrest forward ⇨ *page 64*.
- ▸ Move the head restraint upward as far as it can go.
- ▸ Press the release ⇨ *fig. 53* with the mechanical key ⇨ *page 30* and the button -arrow- ⇨ *fig. 52*. Pull the head restraint out of the backrest at the same time ⇨ ⚠.

Installing the head restraints

- ▸ Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until you feel the posts lock into place.
- ▸ Press the button -arrow- ⇨ *fig. 52* and slide the head restraint all the way down. You should not be able to pull the head restraint out of the backrest.

So that the driver can have a better view to the rear, the head restraints should be pushed down completely when the rear seats are not occupied.

⚠ WARNING

– Only remove the rear seat head restraints when necessary in order to install a child seat. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
– Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 129*.

Memory function

Description

Applies to vehicles: with memory function

Using the memory function, you can quickly and easily store a personal seat profile for the driver and front passenger and recall the settings. The memory function is controlled using the remote control key and the memory buttons in the driver's/front passenger's door*.

The driver's seat profile is stored again and assigned to the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When you open the door, the seat profile is automatically recalled. If two people use the vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses “their own” remote control key.

Two seat profiles can be stored using the memory buttons in the driver's/front passenger's door*. Once they are stored, these seat profiles can be selected at any time.

The following settings are stored: ▸

	Remote control key	Memory button	
	Driver	Driver	Front passenger
Seat	X	X	X
Steering wheel*	X	X	
Both exterior mirrors*	X	X	

Remote control key

Applies to vehicles: with memory function

The driver's seat profile can be assigned to the remote control key when the vehicle is locked.

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Driver's seat** > **Remote control key** > **On**.

Tips

If you do not wish to have the seat profile for another driver assigned to the remote control key, switch the memory function off in the Infotainment system or using the OFF button ⇨ *page 57*.

Memory buttons

Applies to vehicles: with memory function



Fig. 54 Driver's door: Memory function buttons

The memory buttons are located in the driver's/front passenger's door*.

Switching the memory function on/off

- Press the OFF button to switch the memory function on/off. The LED in the button turns on when the memory function is off. Seat profiles are neither stored nor recalled.

Storing a seat profile

- Press the SET button. When the word **SET** lights up, the memory is ready to store settings.
- Now press a memory button briefly. A tone confirms that the settings were stored.

Accessing a seat profile

- If the driver's door is open and the ignition is switched off, press the memory button.
- If the driver's door is closed or the ignition is switched on, press and hold the memory button until the seat adjustment is complete.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary - otherwise you risk having an accident.
- If necessary, you can stop the recall process by pressing the OFF button or any memory button.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat in the Infotainment system

Applies to vehicles: with memory function

The driver can move the front passenger's seat into various positions.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Front passenger's seat** > **Adjust seat position**.
- You can now adjust the front passenger's seat using the driver's seat buttons ⇨ *page 53, fig. 48*.

Align with driver's seat

- To transfer the settings from the driver's seat to the front passenger's seat, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Front passenger's seat** > **Align with driver's seat**. ▶

▸ Press and hold the control knob until the adjusting process is complete.

Tips

The lumbar support and upper thigh support settings are not transferred when aligning the front passenger's seat with the driver's seat.

Ashtray

Applies to vehicles: with ashtray



Fig. 55 Center console: front ashtray*



Fig. 56 Door trim: rear ashtray

Opening/closing

▸ To open the front ashtray, slide the cover up.
▸ To close the front ashtray, press down on the cover.
▸ To open the rear ashtray, tap the cover on the rim.

Emptying

▸ To empty the front ashtray, pull it upward and out.
▸ To empty the rear ashtray, press the rear side of the cover down when it is open ⇨ *fig. 56*. The ashtray will lift up out of its mount.
▸ To insert the ashtray again, press it down into the mount until it locks into place.

WARNING

Never use the ashtray to hold paper, because this increases the risk of a fire.

Cigarette lighter

Applies to vehicles: with cigarette lighter



Fig. 57 Center console: cigarette lighter

▸ Push the knob on the cigarette lighter in.
▸ Remove the cigarette lighter when it pops out.

WARNING

The cigarette lighter only works when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle because this increases the risk of injury.

12 Volt sockets

Applies to vehicles: with 12-volt sockets

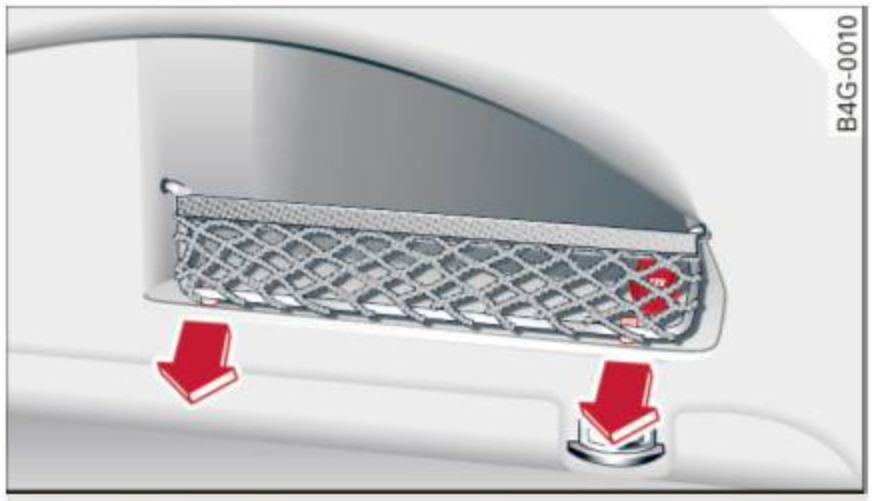


Fig. 58 Luggage compartment side trim panel: Socket



Fig. 59 Rear center console example: Sockets

▸ To reach the 12-volt socket in the luggage compartment, press the net down or remove the bracket from the mounts ⇨ *fig. 58*.

There are additional 12 Volt socket in the center console under the center armrest* and in the rear ⇨ *fig. 59*.

The 12-volt sockets can be used for electrical accessories. The power usage must not exceed 120 watts.

WARNING

The sockets and the electrical accessories connected to them operate only when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to the 12 Volt sockets or the cigarette lighter.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the sockets, only use plugs that fit correctly.

Storage

Cupholder



Fig. 60 Center console: cupholder

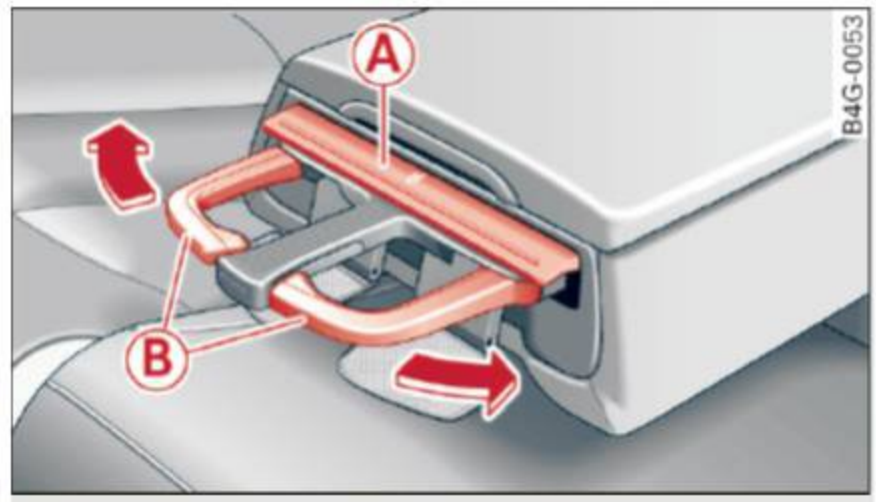


Fig. 61 Rear center armrest: cupholder* extended

Front cupholder

▸ To open the cupholder, tap the cover ⇨ *fig. 60*.

Rear cupholder*

▸ To open the rear cupholder, press on the symbol Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 61*.
▸ To adjust the arm Ⓑ, swing it in the direction of the arrow.
▸ Place the beverage in the holder and release the arm. The arm swings back by itself and automatically secures the beverage.
▸ To close the rear cupholder, press on the center section between the two arms and push the cupholder in the slot as far as it will go.

WARNING

Spilled hot liquid can cause an accident and personal injury. ▶

- Never carry any beverage containers with hot liquids, such as hot coffee or hot tea, in the vehicle while it is moving. In case of an accident, sudden braking or other vehicle movement, hot liquid could spill, causing scalding burns. Spilled hot liquid can also cause an accident and personal injury.
- Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard cups and glasses can cause injury in an accident.
- Never use the cupholder or adapter as an ashtray - risk of fire.

Note

Only drink containers with lids should be carried in the cupholder. Liquid could spill out and damage your vehicle's electronic equipment or stain the upholstery, etc.

Cooled glove compartment

Applies to vehicles: with cooled glove compartment

The cooled glove compartment only functions when the A/C system is switched on.

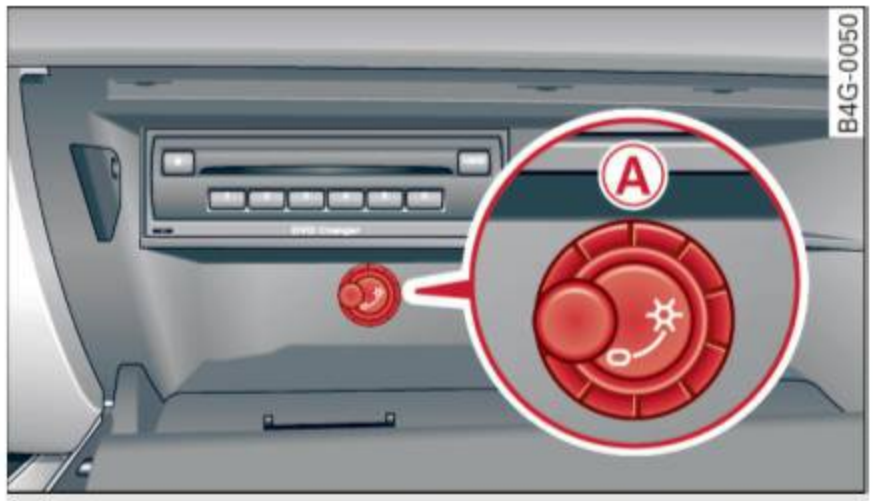


Fig. 62 Glove compartment: switching cooling mode on/off

- ▸ Turn the knob Ⓐ counterclockwise to switch cooling on. The symbols on the knob indicate the correct position.
- ▸ Turn the knob Ⓐ clockwise to switch cooling off.

The glove compartment cooling mode only functions when the vehicle A/C system is switched on. If the heating is switched on, switching the glove compartment cooling mode off is recommended.

WARNING

Always leave the lid on the glove compartment cover closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury.

Additional storage

There are a variety of storage compartments and fasteners in various places in the vehicle.

- Storage compartments in the doors
- Compartment in the glove compartment (cooled*). The glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 30*.
- Storage compartment for (sun)glasses* in the roof (near the interior mirror)
- Storage compartments under the center armrests
- Storage compartment on the rear side of the front seat*. The compartment can hold a maximum weight of 1 kg.
- Compartments* on the back of the front seat backrests
- Garment hooks on the sides of the pillars in the rear of the vehicle and in the rear grab handles
- Compartment in the rear center armrest
- Storage in the trim panels in the luggage compartment

WARNING

- Always remove objects from the instrument panel. Any items not stored could slide around inside the vehicle while driving or when accelerating or when applying the brakes or when driving around a corner.
- When you are driving make sure that anything you may have placed in the center console or other storage locations cannot fall out into the footwells. In case of sudden braking you would not be able to brake or accelerate.
- Always keep the lid of the compartment for (sun)glasses* closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury during a sudden braking maneuver or in the event of an accident.
- Any articles of clothing that you have hung up must not interfere with the driver's view. ▸

The coat hooks are designed only for lightweight clothing. Never hang any clothing with hard, pointed or heavy objects in the pockets on the coat hooks. During sudden braking or in an accident - especially if the airbag is deployed - these objects could injure any passengers inside the vehicle.

– To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.
– Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 163, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.
– Hang clothes in such a way that they do not impair the driver's vision.
– The coat hooks must only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with the side curtain airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a crash.
– Do not use coat hangers for hanging clothing on the coat hooks as this can interfere with proper deployment of the side curtain airbags in an accident.
– Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks, as they could cause personal injury in a sudden stop.

Note

Objects located on the rear shelf that rub against the rear window could damage the heating wires for the rear window defogger.

Roof rack

Description and mounting locations

Additional cargo can be carried with a roof luggage rack.

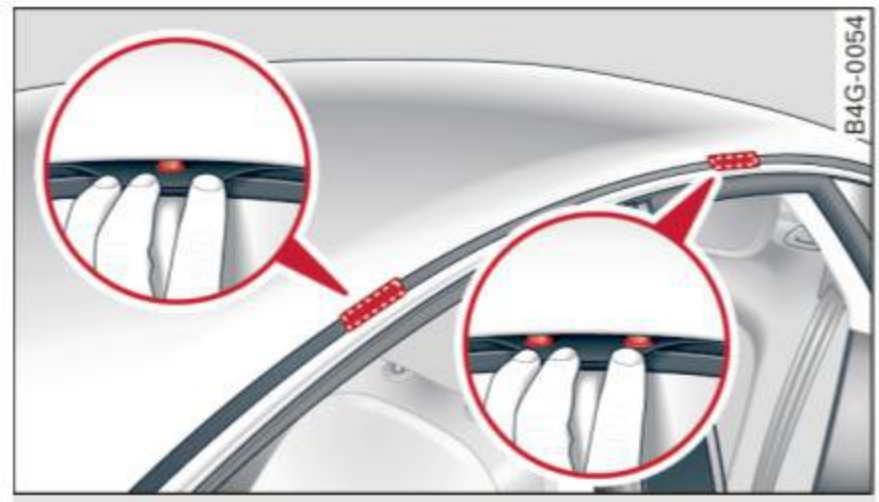


Fig. 63 Roof rack attachment points

▸ Always read and follow the instructions provided by the roof rack manufacturer when installing the roof rack system.

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– Only use roof racks approved for your vehicle. These approved roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Additional attachments or carrier systems are needed to transport luggage and sports equipment. We recommend using roof racks from the Audi original accessories program.
– When installing the roof rack, make sure it is only mounted on the designated locations on the roof ⇨ *fig. 63*.
– We recommend that you keep the installation instructions for your roof rack system together with your Owner's literature in the vehicle.

When should the roof rack be removed?

– Before going through an automatic car wash (it is best to ask the car wash operator for advice).
– When not in use, to reduce fuel consumption, wind noise and to guard against theft.

WARNING

– Use of an unapproved roof rack or incorrect mounting of an approved roof rack can cause the roof rack or the items attached to it to fall off the roof onto the road. ▸

– Objects falling from the roof of a vehicle can cause a crash and personal injury.
– Only mount the roof rack on the designated locations on the roof ⇨ *fig. 63*.
– The roof rack system must be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.
– When driving with a roof rack system, changes to the center of gravity and wind resistance can change the vehicle handling and lead to a collision. Always adapt your driving and your speed to the current conditions.

Note

– Your vehicle warranty does not cover any damages to the vehicle caused by using roof racks or mounting structures not approved by Audi for your vehicle. The same applies to damage resulting from incorrect roof rack installation.
– Always check the roof rack mountings and hardware before each trip and during a trip to make sure everything is securely tightened. If necessary, retighten the mountings and check the entire system from time to time.
– After mounting a roof rack system, or when you transport objects on the roof of your vehicle, the height of the vehicle is naturally increased. Be careful when driving under low bridges or in parking garages for example. This could cause damage to the load and even the vehicle itself.
– Make sure the open rear lid and the sunroof* do not come into contact with the roof rack.

Loading the roof rack

Always distribute loads evenly. Make sure anything on the roof rack is securely tied down.

▸ Always distribute the loads on the roof rack evenly.
▸ Always attach items to the roof rack securely before you drive off.

The maximum permissible roof weight is **220 lb (100 kg)**. The roof weight is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. You must also not exceed the maximum load weight for the roof rack you are using.

When using a roof rack system which has a lower load carrying capacity, you must not use up the total maximum permissible load carrying capacity specified above. Instead, you should load the roof rack system only to the maximum capacity specified by the manufacturer of the roof rack system.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to the roof rack can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.
– Make sure the roof rack is installed exactly as specified above ⇨ *page 61*.
– Always use suitable mounting straps for securing items to the roof rack to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward.
– Items on the roof rack must always be securely mounted.
– The use of a roof rack can negatively affect the way a vehicle handles. Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a greater negative influence on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling. Always drive slowly, avoid sudden braking and maneuvers when transporting cargo on the roof of your vehicle.
– Never exceed the maximum permissible load carrying capacity of the roof of your vehicle, the permissible axle weights and the permissible total weight of your vehicle ⇨ *page 271, Weights*.

For the sake of the environment

As a result of the increased wind resistance created by a roof rack, your vehicle is using fuel unnecessarily. So remove the roof rack after using it.

Luggage compartment

Loading luggage compartment

Luggage items must be stowed securely.

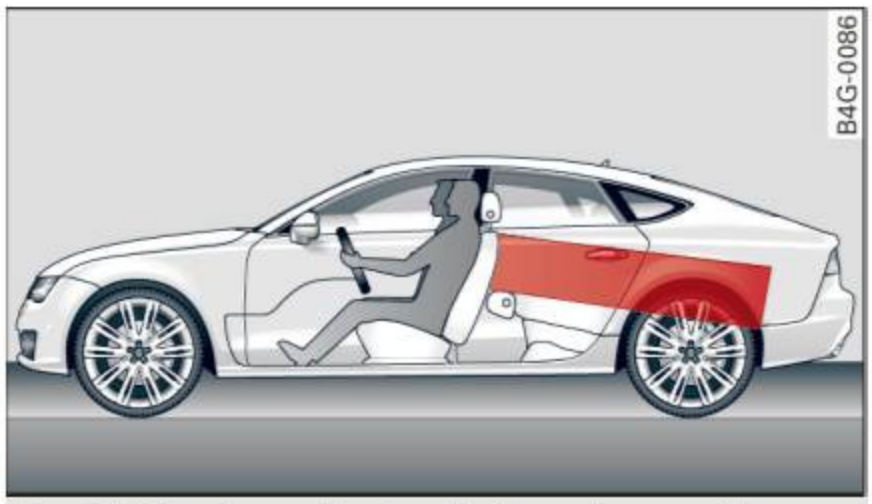


Fig. 64 Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.

Note the following to preserve the vehicle's good handling characteristics.

- ▸ Distribute the load as evenly as possible.
- ▸ Place heavy objects as far forward as possible ⇨ *fig. 64*.
- ▸ Secure luggage items with the cargo net* or with non-elastic retaining straps to the tie-down rings* ⇨ *page 65*.

WARNING

- – Loose objects in the luggage compartment can slide about suddenly and alter the vehicle's handling characteristics.
- – Loose objects in the passenger compartment can fly forward during abrupt maneuvers or accidents and injure occupants.
- – Always store objects in the luggage compartment and use suitable straps, particularly with heavy objects.
- – When you transport heavy objects, always remember that a change in the center of gravity may result in a change in the vehicle's handling characteristics.
- – Follow all warnings ⇨ *page 126, Driving safety*.

Tips

The tire pressure must be adjusted to the load - see the tire pressure sticker located on the driver's side B-pillar.

Luggage compartment cover

The luggage compartment cover consists of two parts.

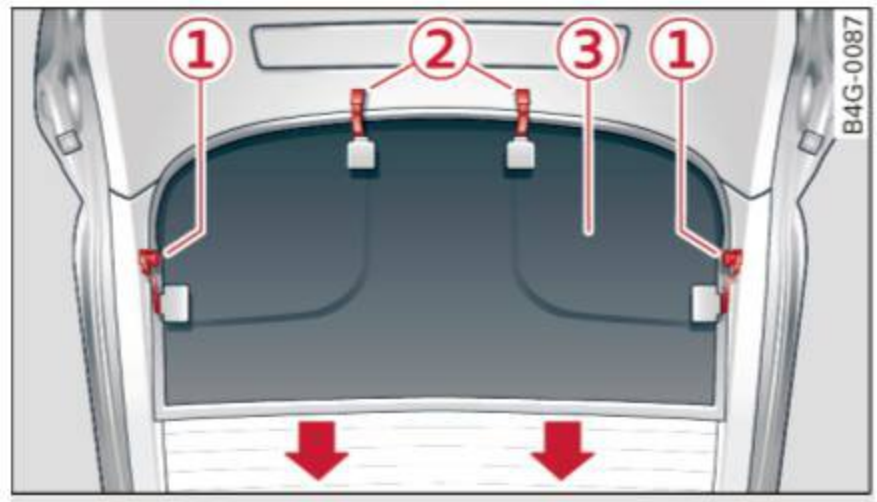


Fig. 65 Cover in the open luggage compartment lid

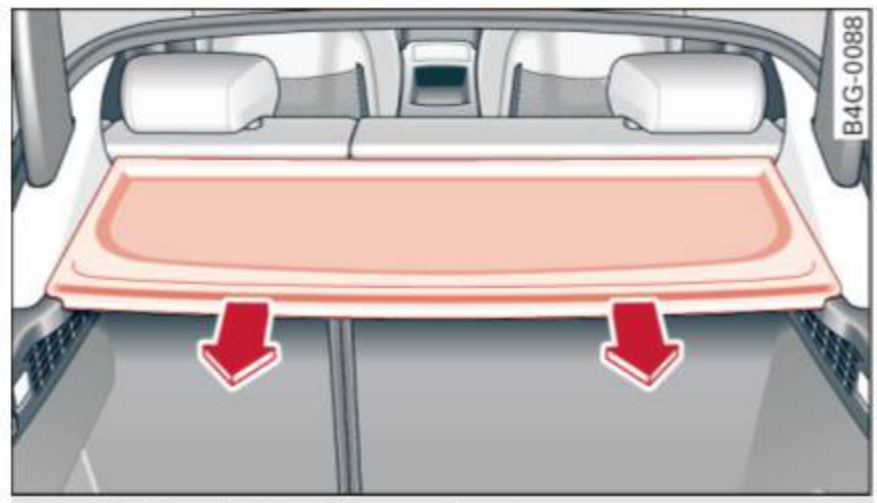


Fig. 66 Cover behind the rear bench seat

Removing the cover in the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Remove the knobs ① ⇨ *fig. 65* from the ball mounts.
- ▸ Pull the cover ③ out of the retainers ② in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the cover in the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Slide the cover upward into the retainers ②.
- ▸ Press the knobs ① onto the ball mounts.

Removing the cover behind the rear bench seat

- ▸ Pull the cover ⇨ *fig. 66* back.
- ▸ Pull the cover upward to release.

Installing the cover behind the rear bench seat

- ▸ Place the left and right sides of the cover into the mounts on the side trim.
- ▸ Slide the cover forward until it locks into place. ▶

WARNING

– To prevent accidents, never install the luggage compartment cover unsecured.
– The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover could endanger all vehicle occupants during sudden braking maneuvers or in a crash.

Note

The defogger and antenna wires in the rear window can be damaged by objects on the luggage compartment cover rubbing against them.

Enlarging cargo capacity of the vehicle interior

The seat backs can be folded forward to enlarge the cargo capacity.

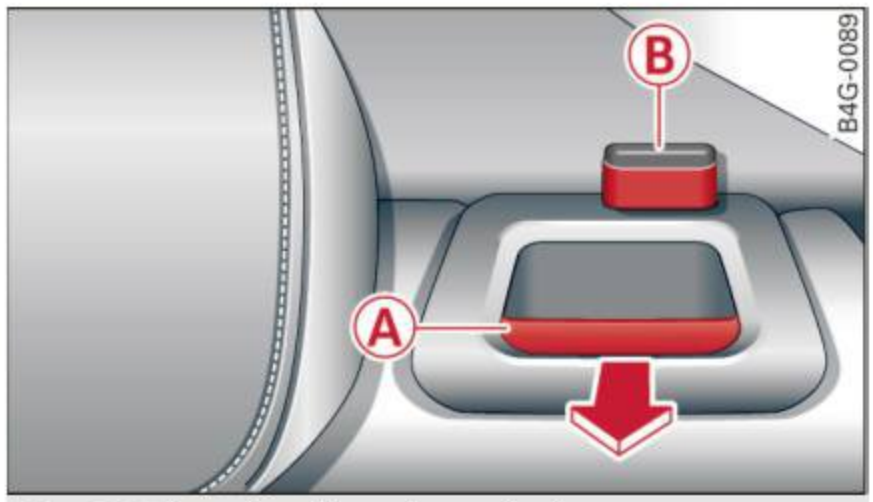


Fig. 67 Release handle on the seatback

Folding the seatback forward

▸ When you pull the release lever Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 67* in the direction of the arrow, the safety knob Ⓑ pops out far enough for the red marking on knob to be visible.
▸ Fold the seatback forward.

Raising the seatback

▸ Raise the seatback until it is securely latched ⇨ ⚠. When you can no longer see the red mark on the safety knob Ⓑ, the seat is latched.

WARNING

– The backrest must always be securely latched so that the safety belt of the center seating position can work properly to help protect the occupant.
– The backrest must be securely latched in position so that no items contained in the luggage compartment can slide forward upon sudden braking.
– Always check whether the latch is fully engaged by pulling the seatback forward.
– Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
– Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in a crash. Inspect the belts periodically. Belts showing damage to webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors must be replaced.

Note

– If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
– Slide the belt guide on the outside safety belt all the way up before folding the backrest back forward. Make sure the seat belt is not pinched or damaged when the rear seat backrest if folded back. Other objects should be removed from the rear seat bench to protect the seatback from damage.

Tie-downs and cargo net

The cargo net prevents small objects from sliding.*



Fig. 68 Location of the tie-downs in the luggage compartment



Fig. 69 Luggage compartment: cargo net*

- ▸ To secure objects with the luggage compartment net*, fold the tie-down bracket upward ⇨ *fig. 68*.
- ▸ Insert the hooks on the luggage compartment net* into the tie-downs ⇨ *fig. 69*.
- ▸ Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 132, Storing cargo correctly*.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

– Always use suitable retaining straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward.
– Never attach a child seat tether strap to a tie-down.
– For strength-related reasons, the mounting hooks can only be used to secure objects weighing up to 10 lb. (5 kg). Heavier objects will not be adequately secured – there is a risk of injury.

Storage hooks



Fig. 70 Luggage compartment: Storage hooks

You can also use the hooks to hang light purses, bags, etc.

WARNING

The hooks can hold a maximum weight of 6.6 lbs. (3 kg). Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

Reversible mat

Applies to vehicles: with cargo mat

The reversible mat protects the luggage compartment and bumper from dirt and scratches.

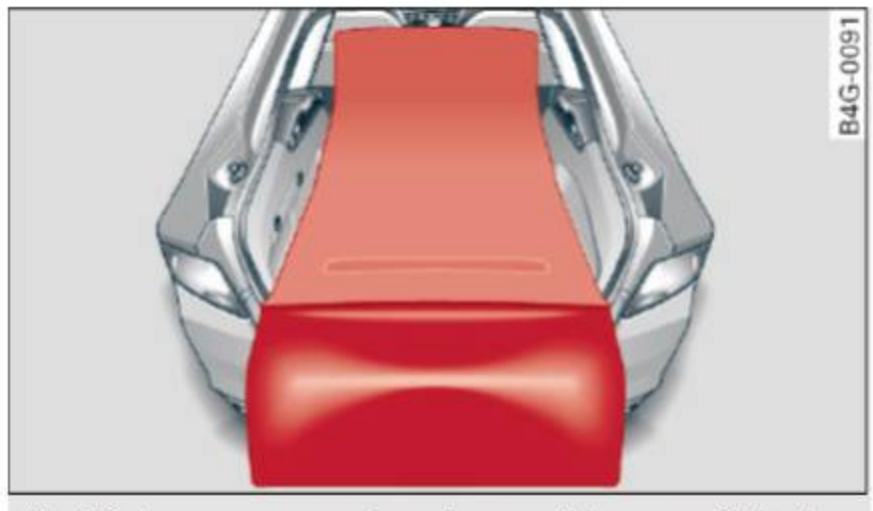


Fig. 71 Luggage compartment: reversible map with backrest folded down.

You can use the reversible mat with the dirt-resistant side or the decorative side. After loading or unloading, fold up the reversible mat and close the luggage compartment lid. Only store the reversible mat if it is dry.

Pass-through with ski bag

Preparing the pass-through

Applies to vehicles: with ski sack

Long objects such as skis can be transported in the ski sack.*



Fig. 72 Rear bench seat: opening the pass-through

Opening the trunk pass-through

- ▸ Fold the center armrest in the rear forward and out.
- ▸ Pull the release handle ⇨ *fig. 72* and fold down the cover of the pass-through in the vehicle interior.
- ▸ Open the rear lid.
- ▸ Push the ski sack* through the opening from the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Secure the ski sack ⇨ *page 66*.

Closing the trunk pass-through

- ▸ Open the rear lid.
- ▸ Remove the ski sack from the trunk pass-through.
- ▸ Push the pass-through cover up inside the vehicle until it latches.
- ▸ Raise the center armrest in the vehicle again.
- ▸ Close the rear lid.

WARNING

Objects must only be transported in the ski sack since the ski sack can be secured. Individual objects cannot be secured. There is a risk of injury.

Tips

You can also open the pass-through from the luggage compartment. Push the release button down and push the cover forward.

Securing the ski sack

Applies to vehicles: with ski sack

The ski sack must be secured in the luggage compartment.



Fig. 73 Luggage compartment: Securing the bag

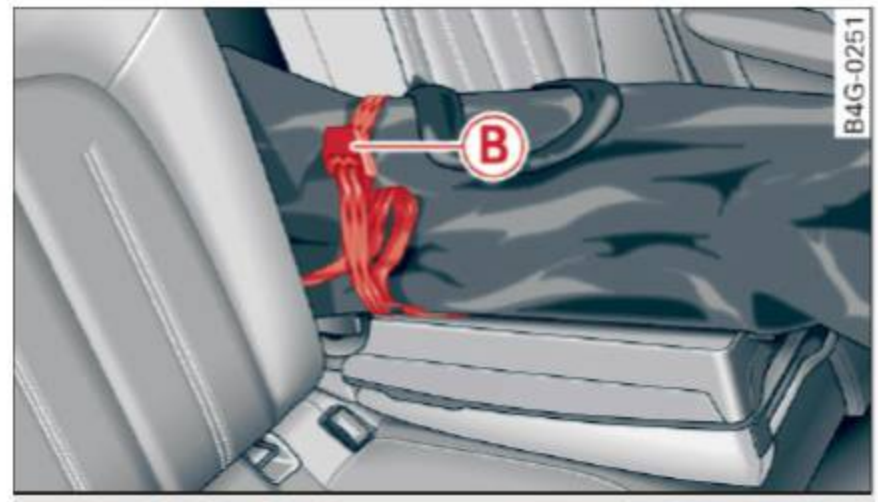


Fig. 74 Securing the objects in the ski sack

Securing the ski sack in the luggage compartment

- ▸ The ski sack has two belts with hooks on the underside ⇨ *fig. 73* Ⓐ. Hang the hooks to the rear fastening eyelets in the luggage compartment.

Securing the objects in the ski sack

- ▸ There is also a securing strap ⇨ *fig. 74* Ⓑ in the sack. Pull the strap taut using the free end of the strap.

WARNING

– The ski sack is intended only for the transportation of skis and other light objects. To ▶

reduce the risk of serious personal injury, never transport heavy or pointed objects in the ski sack.
– When braking rapidly or during an accident, the load could be displaced and cause injury to occupants.
– Sharp edges on the load must be covered for protection. Always fasten the belt tightly around the sack and its contents ⇨ *fig. 74*.

Tips

– Never stow the ski sack away when it is still wet or damp (for example, snow melting from skis). Allow it to dry completely before stowing it away.
– Position skis in the ski sack with the pointed ends facing the front and ski poles with the pointed ends facing the rear.

162.561.4GA.23

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

Applies to vehicles: with three-zone climate control or four-zone automatic climate control

The climate control system warms, cools and adds humidity to the air in the vehicle interior. It is the most effective when the windows and sunroof* are closed. If the temperature inside the parked vehicle becomes very warm, opening the window briefly will speed up the cooling process.

In all heating mode functions except *defrost*, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a certain temperature.

Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

The air pollutants filter must be changed at the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet, so that the air conditioner can properly work.

If you drive your vehicle in an area with high air pollution, the filter may need to be changed more frequently than specified in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet. If in doubt, ask your authorized Audi Service Advisor for advice.

Key coded settings

Three-zone climate control: The blower setting and air distribution are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

Four-zone automatic climate control: The climate control settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

WARNING

Reduced visibility is dangerous and can cause accidents.

- For safe driving it is very important that all windows be free of ice, snow and condensation.
- Completely familiarize yourself with the proper use and function of the heating and ventilation system and especially how to defog and defrost the windows.
- Never use the windshield wiper/washer system in freezing weather until you have warmed the windshield first, using the heating and ventilation system. The washer solution may freeze on the windshield and reduce visibility.

Note

- If you suspect that the air conditioner has been damaged, switch the system off to avoid further damage and have it inspected by a qualified dealership.
- Repairs to the Audi air conditioner require special technical knowledge and special tools. Contact an authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

By reducing the amount of fuel you use, you also reduce the amount of pollutants emitted into the air.

Tips

- Keep the air intake slots (in front of the windshield) free from ice, snow and debris in order to maintain the proper function of the climate control system.
- The energy management system may switch the seat heating* or rear window defroster off temporarily. These systems are available again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.
- Air escapes through vents under the rear window. When placing items of clothing on the luggage compartment cover, ensure that the openings are not covered.

Three-zone climate control

Operating

Applies to vehicles: with three zone climate control

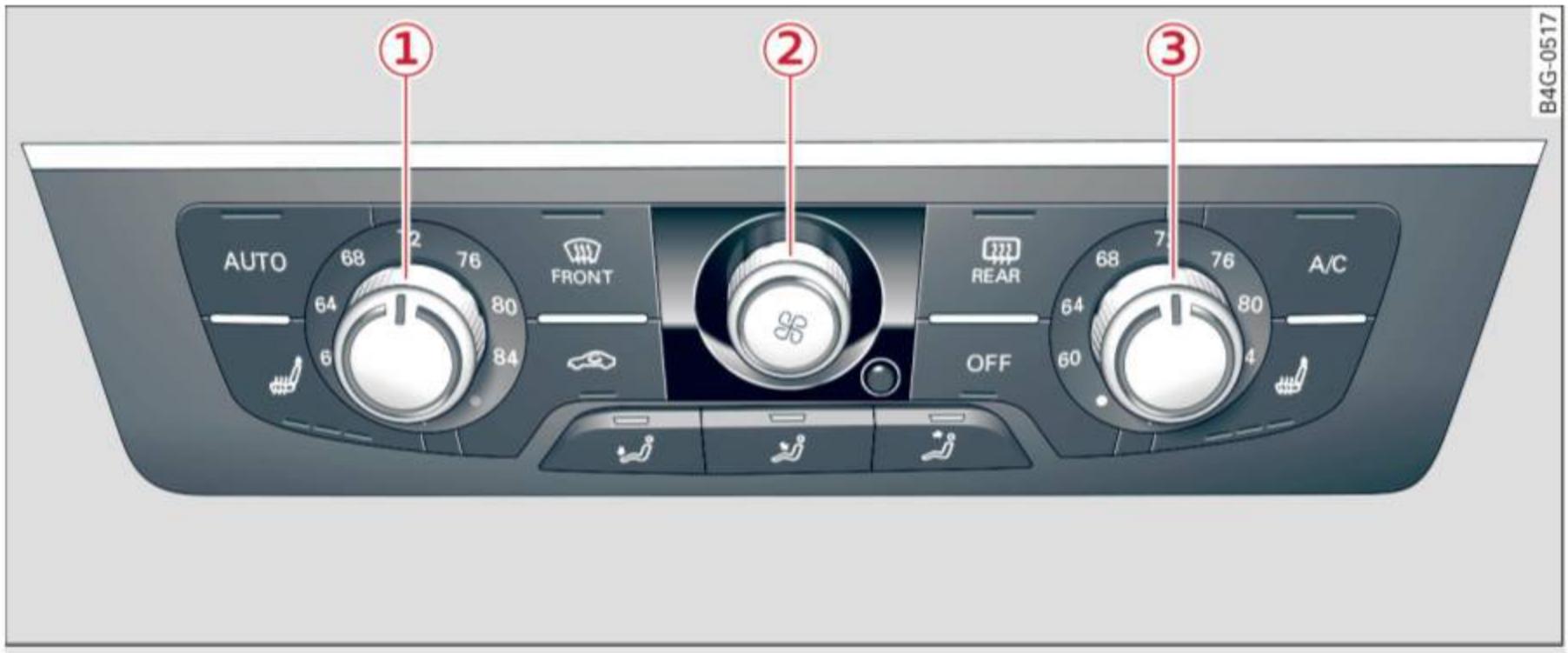


Fig. 75 Three-zone climate control: controls

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. The dial adjusts the temperature and the blower. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

Adjusting the temperature

The temperature can be adjusted individually for the driver and front passenger using the dials ① and ③.

Adjusting the blower

Using the dial ②, you can manually adjust the amount of air generated by the blower to suit your preferences. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting air distribution

You can manually select the vents where the air will flow. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Switching recirculation mode on/off

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. We recommend switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic ⇨ ⚠.

The AUTO button or FRONT button switches recirculation mode off.

OFF Switching the climate control system on/off

The OFF button switches the climate control system on or off. It also switches on when you press the blower control. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off.

A/C Switching cooling mode on/off

The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

FRONT Switching the defroster on/off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation ▶

mode switches off. The temperature should be set to approximately 72 °F (22 °C).

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

REAR Switching the rear window defogger on/off

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after a few minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window heater from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than 2 seconds. This remains stored until the ignition is switched off.

Adjusting seat heating*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After 10 minutes, the seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2.

Air vents

You can open or close the center and rear vents in the cockpit and the vents in the rear center console using the ridged thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

WARNING

- You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

Basic settings

Applies to vehicles: with three-zone climate control

The climate control system basic settings are accessed in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **AC**.

Auxiliary heater*

In vehicles with diesel engines, the auxiliary heater helps to warm the vehicle interior more quickly. The auxiliary heater is controlled automatically in the **Auto** setting.

Four-zone automatic climate control

Operating

Applies to vehicles: with four-zone automatic climate control



Fig. 76 Four-zone automatic climate control: controls



Fig. 77 Four-zone automatic climate control: rear controls

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. Use the controls to adjust the temperature, the blower speed and the air distribution. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on. The front settings are shown in the climate control system display and in the Infotainment system display for a few seconds. The driver and front passenger settings can be adjusted separately.

The settings can also be adjusted in the rear ⇨ *fig. 77*.

OFF Switching the climate control system on/off

The OFF button switches the climate control system on or off. It also switches on when you press the control. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off.

The OFF button in the rear only switches the A/C system on/off in the rear of the vehicle.

A/C Switching cooling mode on/off

The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

Switching recirculation mode on/off

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. We recommend switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic ⇨ ⚠.

The AUTO button or FRONT button switches recirculation mode off.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

Adjusting the temperature

Temperatures between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C) can be set. Outside of this range, **lo** or **hi** will appear in the climate control system display. ▶

At both of these settings, the climate control system runs continuously at maximum cooling or heating power. There is no temperature regulation.

Adjusting the blower

You can adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting air distribution

You can manually select the vents where the air will flow. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting seat heating*/seat ventilation*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating/seat ventilation on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating/seat ventilation off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After 10 minutes, the seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2.

FRONT Switching the defroster on/off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set to approximately 22 °C.

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

REAR Switching the rear window defogger on/off

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after a few minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window heater from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than 2 seconds. This remains stored until the ignition is switched off.

SYNC Synchronization

When synchronization is switched on, the settings for the driver's side are applied to the front passenger's side (except for seat heating/ventilation*). The settings in the rear are also synchronized. Synchronization switches off if the settings are adjusted on the front passenger's side or in the rear.

You can synchronize the settings in a row by pressing and holding a control. For example, to apply the settings for the front passenger's side to the driver's side, press and hold the control on the front passenger's side. The same applies to the rear.

Residual heat*

With the ignition turned off, you can activate the residual heat function by pressing the button ⇨ *fig. 76*. The residual heat from the coolant is used to heat the vehicle interior. The residual heat function switches off automatically after about 30 minutes.

Air vents

You can open or close the center and rear vents in the cockpit and the vents in the rear center console and door pillars using the ridged thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

WARNING

- You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

Basic settings

Applies to vehicles: with four-zone automatic climate control

The climate control system basic settings are accessed in the Infotainment system.

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **AC**.

Rear seat settings

When this function is selected, all settings for the rear can be adjusted through the climate control system in the cockpit. The climate control system settings cannot be adjusted in the rear seat at the same time. This function switches off after a certain period of time or when one of the controls in the cockpit is pressed.

Recirculation mode

The sensitivity level of the automatic recirculation mode can be set at various levels from **Off** to **Sensitive**. Recirculation mode is controlled automatically. If the windows fog up, press the FRONT button.

Footwell temperature

You can adjust the footwell temperature so that it is cooler or warmer.

Auxiliary heater*

In vehicles with diesel engines*, the auxiliary heater helps to warm the vehicle interior more quickly. The auxiliary heater is controlled automatically in the **Auto** setting.

- Press the button to switch steering wheel heating on/off. The message **Steering wheel heating on/Steering wheel heating off** appears in the instrument cluster display.

The temperature is maintained at a constant level when steering wheel heating is switched on.

The steering wheel heating settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

Steering wheel heating

Applies to vehicles: with heated steering wheel

The steering wheel rim can be heated.

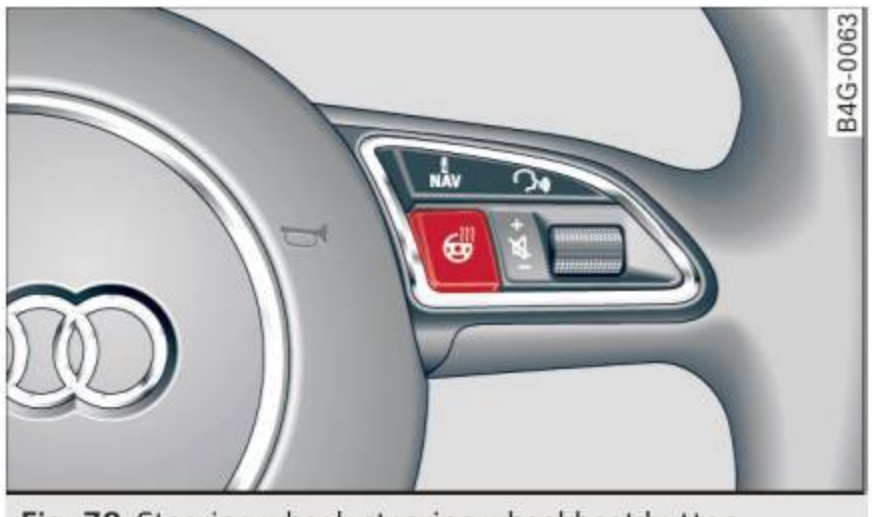


Fig. 78 Steering wheel: steering wheel heat button

Driving

Steering

Manually adjustable steering wheel

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable steering wheel

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

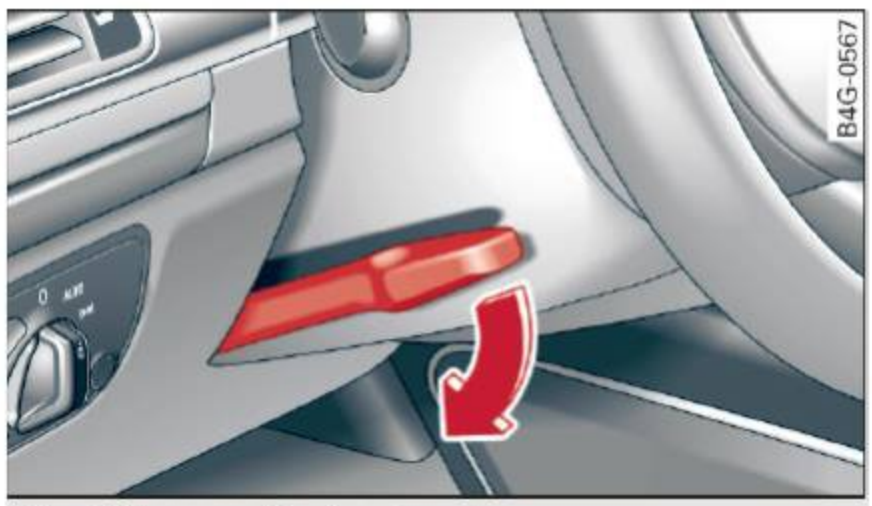


Fig. 79 Lever on the steering column

- ▸ Pull the lever ⇨ *fig. 79 -arrow-* ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- ▸ Push the lever against the steering column until it locks.

There must be at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the center of the steering wheel. If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, see if adaptive equipment is available to help you reach the pedals and increase the distance from the steering wheel.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 53*.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.

- – Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.
- – Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇨ *page 127, fig. 144*. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.
- – If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.
- – If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.
- – Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.
- – Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.

Electrically adjustable steering wheel

Applies to vehicles: with electrically adjustable steering wheel

The steering wheel position can be electrically adjusted for height and reach.

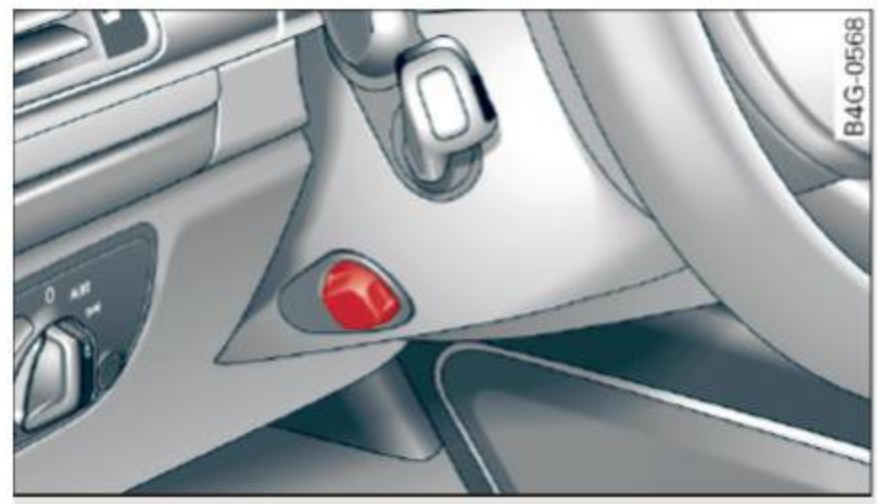


Fig. 80 Switch for steering wheel adjustment

- ▸ To adjust the height, press the switch up/down. The steering column will continue moving as long as you are pressing the switch.
- ▸ To move the steering wheel forward or back, press the switch forward/back. The steering column will continue moving as long as you are pressing the switch. ▶

There must be at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the center of the steering wheel. If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, see if adaptive equipment is available to help you reach the pedals and increase the distance from the steering wheel.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 53*.

In vehicles with the memory function*, the steering column settings are stored together with the seat position.

WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.

- Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.
- Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇨ *page 127, fig. 144*. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.
- If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.
- If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.
- Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.

Easy seat entry

Applies to vehicles: with power steering wheel adjustment

Easy seat entry makes it easier to enter and exit the vehicle by adjusting the steering column automatically.

▸ In the Infotainment system, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Driver's seat** > **Easy seat entry** > **On**.

When easy seat entry is switched on, the steering column goes back up into the park position when the ignition is switched off. After entering the vehicle, the steering column returns to the stored position once the ignition is switched on.

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

The START ENGINE STOP button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.



Fig. 81 Center console: START ENGINE STOP button

Starting the engine

▸ Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever to the P or N position.

▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

▸ It is possible that there will be a slight delay when starting the engine in diesel vehicles in colder temperatures. Therefore, you must hold the brake pedal down until the engine starts. The indicator light turns on while the engine is preheating.

Switching the ignition on/off

If you would like to switch the ignition on without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button **without** pressing the brake pedal.
- ▸ To switch the ignition off, press the button again. The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

The prewarming runs automatically in diesel vehicles when the ignition is switched on.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine.

If the engine should not start immediately, the starting process is automatically stopped after a short time. Repeat starting procedure.

Start-Stop-System*

Note the information in ⇨ *page 80, Start-Stop-System*.

WARNING

- Never allow the engine to run in confined spaces, because this increases the risk of asphyxiation.
- Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- The brake booster and power steering no longer function when you stop the engine. You must use more force when braking or steering. Because you cannot brake and steer as you usually would, this could lead to accidents and serious injuries. These functions are still active if the Start-Stop-System* has stopped the engine.

Note

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load as long as the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

Tips

- After starting a cold engine, there may be a brief period of increased noise because the oil pressure must first build up in the hydraulic valve adjusters. This is normal and not a cause for concern.
- If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.

Stopping the engine

- ▸ Bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
- ▸ Move the selector lever to the P or N position.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button ⇨ *page 75, fig. 81*.

Steering lock

The steering locks when you turn the engine off using the START ENGINE STOP button and open the driver's door. The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

Emergency off

If necessary, the engine can be switched off with the selector lever in the R or D/S position. The engine stops if you press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button at speeds below 6 mph (10 km/h) and press the brake pedal.

WARNING

- Never turn off the engine until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- The brake booster and power steering only work when the engine is running. If the engine is off, you have to use more force when steering or braking. Because you cannot steer and brake as you usually would, this could lead to crashes and serious injuries.
- For safety reasons, you should always park your vehicle with the selector lever in P. Otherwise, the vehicle could inadvertently roll away.

– After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition switched off. It can also switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises as the result of a heat buildup or if the engine is hot and the engine compartment is additionally heated by the sun's rays.

Note

Do not stop the engine immediately after hard or extended driving. Keep the engine running for approximately two minutes to prevent excessive heat build-up.

Messages

Turn off ignition before leaving car

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on.

Press brake pedal to start engine

This message appears if you do not press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Is key in the vehicle?

This indicator light turns on and this message appears if the ignition key was removed from the vehicle when the engine was running. If the ignition key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch on the ignition or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P.

This message appears for safety reasons if the transmission is not in the P position when you switch the ignition off. Move the selector lever to the P position. Otherwise the vehicle is not protected from rolling and it cannot be locked.

Key is not recognized. Hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 77*.

Turn off ignition before leaving car. Battery is discharging

This driver message appears if the driver's door is opened while the ignition is switched on. Always switch off the ignition if you are leaving the vehicle. Refer to ⇨ *page 81*.

Shift to P and turn off ignition before leaving car, otherwise vehicle can roll away

This message appears if the driver's door is opened while the ignition is switched on and the selector lever is not in the P position. Move the selector lever into the P position and switch the ignition off when you exit the vehicle. Otherwise the vehicle could roll. Refer to ⇨ *page 81*.

Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

It may not be possible to start the engine under certain circumstances, for example if the battery in the vehicle key is drained, if interference is affected the key or if there is a system malfunction.



Fig. 82 Center console/master key: starting the engine when there is a malfunction

Requirement: The message **Key is not recognized. Hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual** is displayed and the indicator light turns on.

- Hold the master key in the location indicated as shown in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 82*.
- Press the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠ *in Starting the engine on page 76*.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

▸ Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

You can view the message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Electromechanical parking brake

Operation

The electromechanical parking brake replaces the hand brake.



Fig. 83 Center console: Parking brake

▸ Pull on the switch Ⓟ ⇨ *fig. 83* to apply the parking brake. The indicator lights in the switch and PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster illuminate.
▸ With the ignition switched on, step on the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal and press the switch Ⓟ at the same time to release the parking brake. The indicator lights in the switch and PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster go out.

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

In addition to the normal functions of a traditional hand brake, the electromechanical parking brake provides various convenience and safety functions.

When starting from rest

– The integral starting assist helps you when driving by automatically releasing the parking brake ⇨ *page 79, Starting from a stop*.
– When starting on inclines, the starting assist prevents the vehicle from unintentionally rolling back. The braking force of the parking brake is not released until sufficient driving force has been built up at the wheels.

Emergency brake function

An emergency brake ensures that the vehicle can be slowed down even if the *normal* brakes fail ⇨ *page 79, Emergency braking function*.

WARNING

Do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently if the vehicle is stationary but the engine is running and a gear is selected. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately and could result in a crash.

Tips

– If the parking brake is applied with the ignition switched off, the indicator lights in the switch and PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) in the instrument cluster will go out after a certain period of time.
– Occasional noises when the parking brake is applied and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
– When the vehicle is parked, the parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals. Any associated noises are normal.

Parking

▸ Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
▸ Pull the switch Ⓟ to set the parking brake.
▸ Move the selector lever to P.
▸ Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving. ▶

WARNING

– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No one should remain in the vehicle when it is locked, especially children. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Starting from a stop

The start assist function ensures that the parking brake is released automatically upon starting.

Stopping and setting the parking brake

▸ Pull the switch Ⓟ to set the parking brake.

Starting and automatically releasing the parking brake

▸ When you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake is automatically released and your vehicle begins to move.

The parking brake can be set if you must stop the vehicle at a stop light or in traffic. The vehicle does not have to be held with the brake pedal. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep when a selector lever position is engaged. The parking brake releases automatically and the vehicle begins to move as soon as you press the accelerator pedal as usual.

Starting on slopes

When starting on inclines, the hill start assist prevents the vehicle from unintentionally rolling back. The braking force of the parking brake is not released until sufficient driving force has been built up at the wheels.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is engaged in the buckle.

Starting to drive with a trailer

To prevent rolling back unintentionally on an incline, do the following:

▸ Keep the switch pulled Ⓟ and press the accelerator pedal. The parking brake stays applied and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.
▸ You can release the switch Ⓟ once you are sure that you are transferring enough driving force to the wheels by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Depending on the weight of the rig (vehicle and trailer) and the severity of the incline, you may roll backwards as you start.

Emergency braking function

This is used if the conventional brake system fails or locks up.

▸ To brake your vehicle in an emergency, pull the Ⓟ switch and hold it pulled.
▸ As soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate, the braking stops.

If you pull the switch Ⓟ and hold it above a speed of about 5 mph (8 km/h), the emergency braking function is initiated. The vehicle is braked at all four wheels by activating the hydraulic brake system. The brake performance is similar to making an emergency stop ⇨ ⚠.

In order not to activate the emergency braking by mistake, an audible warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. As soon as the Ⓟ switch is released, or the accelerator pedal is depressed, emergency braking stops.

WARNING

Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the normal brake pedal has failed or the brake pedal is obstructed. Using the parking brake to perform emergency braking will slow your vehicle down as if you had ▸

made a full brake application. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to break away, which increases the risk of an accident.

Start-Stop-System

Description

Applies to vehicles: with Start-Stop-System

The Start-Stop-System can help increase fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start-Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when the vehicle is stopped, such as at a traffic light. The ignition remains switched on during this stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

The Start-Stop-System is automatically activated each time you switch on the ignition.

Basic requirements for Start-Stop mode

– The driver's door is closed.
– The driver' seat belt is latched.
– The hood is closed.
– The vehicle must have been driven faster than 2.5 mph (4 km/h) since the last stop.
– A trailer is not hitched to the vehicle.

Note

Always switch the Start-Stop-System off when driving through water ⇨ *page 80*.

Tips

The engine stops shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop[1)]. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is still available.

Stopping/starting the engine

Applies to vehicles: with Start-Stop-System



Fig. 84 Instrument cluster: engine stopped (stop phase)

- Brake the vehicle to a stop. The engine will be switched off shortly before the vehicle comes to a standstill or when the vehicle is stationary[1)]. Keep your foot on the brake pedal. The Ⓐ indicator light appears in the information line at the bottom of the instrument cluster display. The needle in the tachometer also moves into the **READY** position.
- The engine starts again when you take your foot off the brake pedal. The indicator light turns off.

Additional information

The engine stops in the P, N and D selector lever positions.

If you select the R position during a stop phase, the engine will start again.

Shift to P quickly to prevent the engine from starting unintentionally when shifting through R.

You can determine for yourself if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. As soon as you press the brake down harder, the engine will switch off.

Tips

– Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling. ▶

1) depending on engine

– The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase. The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

General information

Applies to vehicles: with Start-Stop-System

The standard Start-Stop mode can be canceled for different system-related reasons.



Fig. 85 Instrument cluster: Engine stop temporarily unavailable

Engine does not switch off

Before and during each stop phase, the system checks if certain conditions have been met. For example, the engine will not switch off in the following situations:

– The engine has not reached the minimum required temperature for Start-Stop mode.
– The interior temperature selected by the A/C system has not been reached.
– The outside temperature is extremely high/low.
– The windshield is being defrosted.
– The parking system* is be switched on.
– The battery charge level is too low.
– The steering wheel is turned at a sharp angle or is moving.
– After engaging the reverse gear.
– On sharp inclines.

also appears in the instrument cluster display.

Engine automatically restarts

The standard Start-Stop mode will be canceled during a stop phase in the following situations. The engine restarts without any action by the driver.

– The vehicle rolls, for example while on a slope.
– The interior temperature varies from the temperature selected in the A/C system.
– The windshield is being defrosted.
– The brake pedal is pressed several times in a row.
– The battery charge level becomes too low.
– High power consumption.

The engine can turn off again when the conditions for Start-Stop mode are met.

Ignition is switched off automatically

To prevent the battery from draining, the **ignition** will switch off automatically under the following conditions:

– The vehicle has already been driven.
– The Start-Stop-System has stopped the engine.
– The driver's door is opened.
– The driver's safety belt is removed.
– The brake pedal is not pressed down.
– The vehicle is stationary.

In this case, the activated low beam is replaced by the parking light. The parking lights will switch off after approximately 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle.

If the Start-Stop-System has not turned off the engine or if you have switched the Start-Stop-System off manually, the ignition will not be automatically switched off and the engine will continue to run ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Never allow the engine to run in confined spaces, because this increases the risk of asphyxiation.

Tips

– If you shift into the D or N position after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the engine to switch off again.

Switching the Start-Stop-System on/off manually

Applies to vehicles: with Start-Stop-System

If you do not wish to use the system, you can switch it off manually.



Fig. 86 Center console: Start-Stop-System button

▸ To switch the Start-Stop-System off/on manually, press the Ⓐ button. The LED in the button turns on when the system is switched off.

Tips

If you switch the system off during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to vehicles: with Start-Stop-System

Start-stop system deactivated: Please restart engine manually

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a stop phase and the Start-Stop-System will **not** be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started with the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start-stop system: System fault! Currently unavailable

There is a malfunction in the Start-Stop-System. Drive the vehicle to an authorized repair facility for servicing as soon as possible to correct the malfunction.

Speed warning system

Introduction

The speed warning system helps you to stay under a specified maximum speed.

The speed warning system warns you if you are exceeding the maximum speed that you have set. You will hear a warning tone when your speed exceeds the stored value by approximately 3 mph (3 km/h). An indicator light MPH (USA models)/ km/h (Canada models) in the instrument cluster display also turns on at the same time. The indicator light MPH/ km/h turns off when the speed decreases below the stored maximum speed.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Tips

Even though your vehicle is equipped with a speed warning system, you should still watch the speedometer to make sure you are not driving faster than the speed limit.

Setting the threshold

You can set, change and delete the warning threshold in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Speed warning**.

You can set any threshold between 20 mph (30 km/h) and 150 mph (240 km/h). Settings can each be adjusted in increments of 6 mph (10 km/h).

Cruise control system

Switching on

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

The cruise control system makes it possible to drive a constant speed that is 30 km/h or higher.

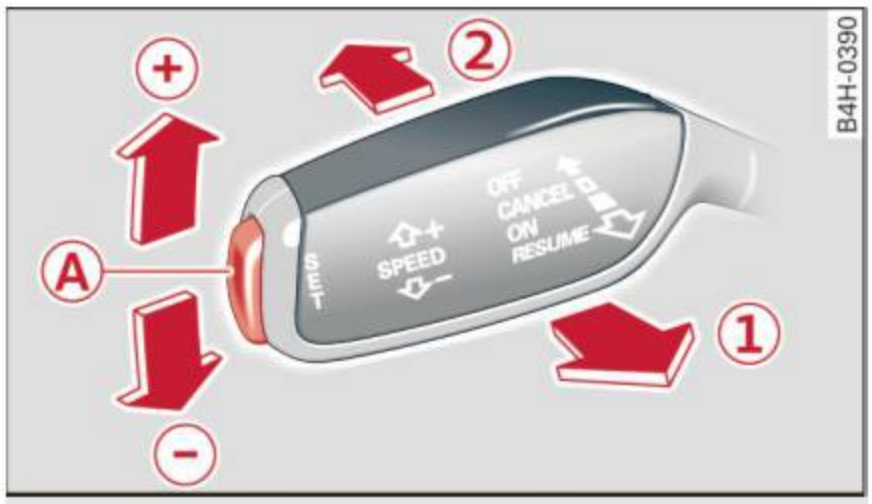


Fig. 87 Operating lever: Cruise control system



Fig. 88 Instrument cluster: Selected speed

- ▸ To switch the cruise control on, pull the lever into position (1) ⇨ *fig. 87*.
- ▸ Drive at the speed to be maintained.
- ▸ To store the speed, press the button (A).

The stored speed and the indicator light CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) appear in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *fig. 88*. The display may vary, depending on the type of display in your vehicle.

This information is also shown briefly in the Head-up display*.

The speed is kept constant by modifying engine power or through an active brake intervention.

WARNING

- – Always pay attention to the traffic around you when the cruise control is in operation. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
- – For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
- – Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or in construction zones.
- – Please note that unconsciously “resting” your foot on the accelerator pedal prevents the cruise control from braking. This is due to the control system being overridden by the driver's acceleration.
- – If a brake system malfunction such as overheating occurs when the cruise control system is switched on, the braking function in the system may be switched off. The rest of the cruise control system functions remain active as long as the indicator light CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) is on.

Tips

The brake lights illuminate as soon as the brakes apply automatically.

Changing speed

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed in increments, tap the lever toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 83, fig. 87*.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed quickly, hold the lever in the (+)/(-) direction until the desired speed is displayed.

You can also press the accelerator pedal down to increase your speed, e.g. if you want to pass someone. The speed you saved earlier will resume as soon as you release the accelerator pedal.

If, however, you exceed your saved speed by 6 mph (10 km/h) for longer than 5 minutes, the cruise control will turn off temporarily. The green symbol CRUISE (US models) / ▸

(Canadian models) in the display will go out but the saved speed remains the same.

Preselecting the speed

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system

You can preselect your desired speed when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Pull the lever into position ① ⇨ *page 83, fig. 87*.
- ▸ To increase or decrease the speed, tap the lever toward ⊕/⊖.
- ▸ To store the speed displayed, release the lever.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the speed you want before driving on the highway. Once on the highway, activate the cruise control by pulling the lever toward ①.

Switching the system off

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control

Temporary deactivation

- ▸ Press the brake pedal, or
- ▸ Press the lever into position ② (not clicked into place) ⇨ *page 83, fig. 87*, or
- ▸ Drive for longer than 5 minutes at more than 5 mph (10 km/h) above the stored speed.

Switching off completely

- ▸ Press lever into position ② (clicked into place), or
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

The system retains the saved speed if you deactivate the cruise control temporarily. To resume the saved speed, release the brake pedal and pull the lever to position ①.

Switching the ignition off erases the saved speed.

⚠ WARNING

You should only return to the saved speed if it is not too fast for the current traffic conditions - risk of an accident!

Audi adaptive cruise control and braking guard

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control system assists the driver by regulating vehicle speed and helping to maintain a set distance to the vehicle ahead, within the limits of the system. If the system detects a moving vehicle up ahead, adaptive cruise control can brake and then accelerate your vehicle. This helps to make driving more comfortable both on long highway stretches and in stop-and-go traffic.

The braking guard system can warn you about an impending collision and initiate braking maneuvers ⇨ *page 91*.

Adaptive cruise control and braking guard have technical limitations that you must know, so please read this section carefully, understand how the system works and use them properly at all times.

General information

General information

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 89 Front of the vehicle: sensors and video camera

The areas that contain the radar and ultrasonic sensors and the video camera ⇨ *fig. 89* must never be covered by stickers or other objects or obstructed with dirt, insects, snow or ice that will interfere with the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 205*. The same applies for any modifications made in the front area.

The function of the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard is limited under some conditions:

– Objects can only be detected when they are within sensor range ⇨ *page 87, fig. 92*.
– The system has a limited ability to detect objects that are a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle or moving into your lane.
– Some kinds of vehicles are hard to detect; for example motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance or overhanging loads may be detected when it is too late or they may not be detected at all.
– When driving through curves ⇨ *page 86*.
– Stationary objects ⇨ *page 86*.

WARNING

Always pay attention to traffic when adaptive cruise control is switched on and braking guard is active. As the driver, you are still responsible for starting and for maintaining speed and distance to other objects. Braking guard is used to assist you. The driver must always take action to avoid a collision. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

– Improper use of adaptive cruise control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.
– Never let the comfort and convenience that adaptive cruise control and braking guard offer distract you from the need to be alert to traffic conditions and the need to remain in full control of your vehicle at all times,
– Always remember that the adaptive cruise control and braking guard have limits – they will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, a stalled or disabled vehicle. If registered by the radar sensors, vehicles or obstacles that are not moving can trigger a collision warning and if confirmed by the video camera, an acute collision warning. ▶

- For safety reasons, do not use adaptive cruise control when driving on roads with many curves, when the road surface is in poor condition and/or in bad weather (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning). Using the system under these conditions could result in a collision.
- Switch adaptive cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, on expressway exits or in construction zones. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the set speed when in these situations.
- The adaptive cruise control system will not brake by itself if you put your foot on the accelerator pedal. Doing so can override the speed and distance regulation.
- When approaching stationary objects such as stopped traffic, adaptive cruise control will not respond and braking guard will have limited function.
- The adaptive cruise control system and braking guard do not react to people, animals, objects crossing the road or oncoming objects.
- The function of the radar sensors can be affected by reflective objects such as guard rails, the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain or ice.
- Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The adaptive cruise control cannot slow or brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a sudden or emergency stop under these conditions.
- To prevent unintended operation, always switch ACC off when it is not being used.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. That could affect the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard. Have your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

In curves

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

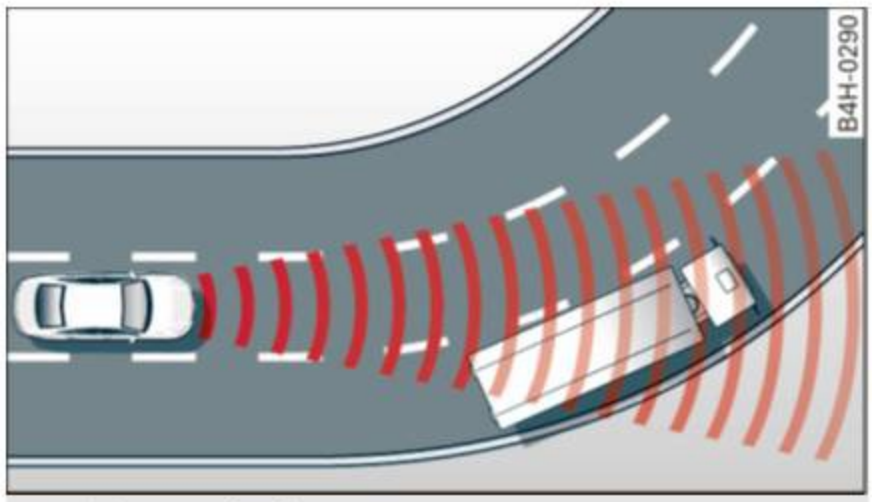


Fig. 90 Example: driving into a curve

When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 90* and out of a curve, the adaptive cruise control may react to an object in the neighboring lane and apply the brakes. You can prevent that by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.

Stationary objects

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

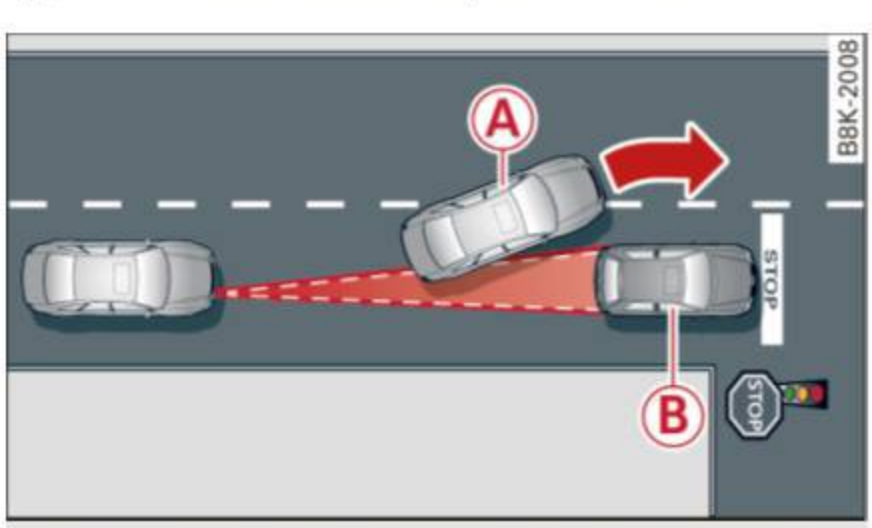


Fig. 91 Example: object changing lanes and stationary object

The adaptive cruise control system only reacts to objects that are moving or that the system has already detected as moving. For example, it can react when a vehicle that has already been detected Ⓐ turns or changes lanes, but adaptive cruise control does not react to a stationary vehicle Ⓑ.

Audi adaptive cruise control

Description

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

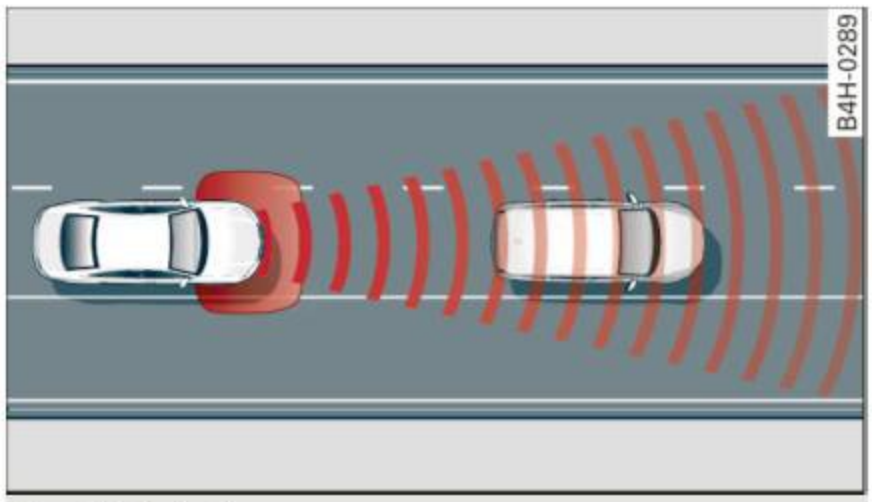


Fig. 92 Detection range

What can adaptive cruise control do?

The adaptive cruise control system uses video, radar and ultrasound. Moving vehicles ahead can be recognized up to about 650 feet (200 m) away.

On open roads with no traffic, adaptive cruise control works like a regular cruise control system. The stored speed is maintained. When approaching a moving vehicle detected up ahead, the adaptive cruise control system automatically slows down to match that vehicle's speed and then maintains the distance that the driver previously stored. As soon as the system does not detect a vehicle up ahead, adaptive cruise control accelerates back up to the stored speed.

In stop-and-go traffic, adaptive cruise control can brake until the vehicle stops and accelerate again under certain conditions and if this is possible within the system's limits and capabilities ⇨ *page 89*. Adaptive cruise control will not make an emergency stop.

Which functions can be controlled?

When you switch adaptive cruise control on, you can set the current speed as the "control speed" ⇨ *page 87, Switching on and off*.

When driving, you can stop cruise control ⇨ *page 89* or change the speed ⇨ *page 88* at any time.

You can also set the distance to the object ahead and set the adaptive cruise control driving program ⇨ *page 89*.

Switching on and off

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

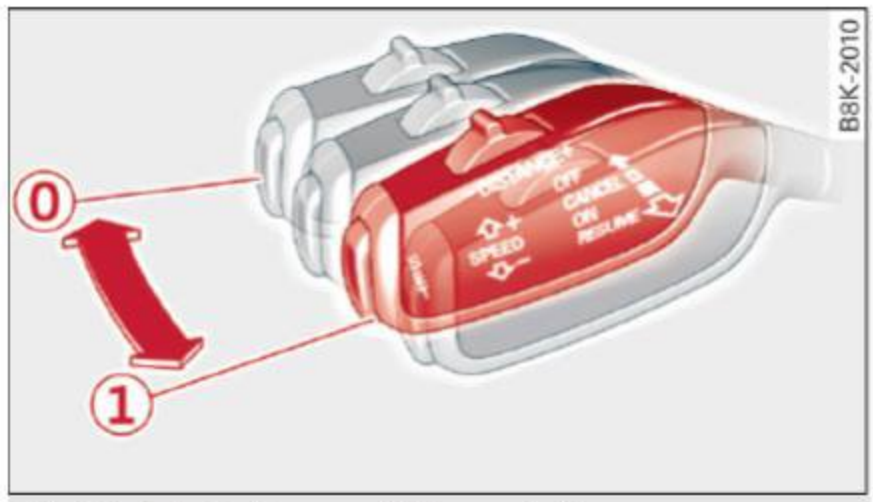


Fig. 93 Selector lever: switching on/off



Fig. 94 Instrument cluster: adaptive cruise control

You can set any speed between 20 mph and 95 mph (30 and 150 km/h).

Indicator lamps and messages in the instrument cluster display inform you about the current system status and settings.

An additional indicator appears in the Head-up Display*.

Switching adaptive cruise control on

▸ Pull the lever toward you into position (1) ⇨ *fig. 93*. **ACC standby** appears in the instrument cluster display.

Setting the speed and activating regulation

▸ To set the current speed, press the SET button ⇨ *fig. 93*. The set speed is shown in the tachometer (A) and is also shown briefly in the display (B) ⇨ *fig. 94*. ▶

▸ You must also press the brake pedal when the vehicle is stopped.

Switching adaptive cruise control off

▸ Push the lever away from you into position ⓪ until it clicks into place. The message **ACC off** appears.

Ⓑ Indicator lights

- Adaptive cruise control is switched on. No vehicles are detected up ahead. The stored speed is maintained.

- A moving vehicle is detected up ahead. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed and distance to the moving vehicle ahead and accelerates/brakes automatically.

- Adaptive cruise control is switched on. A moving vehicle up ahead was detected. Your vehicle remains stopped.

- When automatic braking is not able to keep enough distance to a previously detected moving vehicle up ahead, you must take control and brake ⇨ *page 90, Prompt for driver intervention*.

Ⓒ Display

If adaptive cruise control is not shown in the display, you can call it up with the multifunction steering wheel buttons ⇨ *page 23*.

Based on the symbols in the display, you can determine if the system is maintaining a distance to the vehicle ahead and what that distance is.

No vehicle - No vehicle ahead was detected.

White vehicle - A vehicle ahead was detected.

Red vehicle - Prompt for the driver to take action ⇨ *page 90*.

Both **arrows** on the **scale** Ⓒ indicate the distance to the vehicle ahead. No arrow appears when the vehicle is on an open road and there is no object ahead. If an object is detected ahead, the arrow moves on the scale.

The green zone on the scale shows the stored distance. For information on changing the stored distance, refer to ⇨ *page 89*. If the distance selected is too close or may soon become too close, the arrows move into the red zone on the scale.

WARNING

Improper use of the adaptive cruise control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injuries.

– Pressing the SET button when driving at speeds below 20 mph (30 km/h), will automatically accelerate the vehicle to 20 mph (30 km/h), which is the minimum speed that can be set.

Tips

– If you switch the ignition or the adaptive cruise control off, the set speed is erased from the system memory.
– The electronic stabilization control (ESC) and the anti-slip-regulation (ASR) are automatically turned on when the adaptive cruise control is turned on. Both systems cannot be turned off if the adaptive cruise control is turned on.

Changing the speed

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 95 Operating lever: Changing the speed

▸ To increase or reduce the speed in increments, **tap** the lever up or down.
▸ To increase or decrease the speed quickly, **hold** the lever up or down until the red LED Ⓐ reaches the desired speed ⇨ *page 87, fig. 94*.

After each change, the new stored speed appears briefly in the information line ⇨ *page 87, fig. 94* Ⓓ.

Driving in stop-and-go traffic

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control system also assists you in stop-and-go traffic. If a previous detected vehicle ahead stops, your vehicle will brake to a stop, within the limits of the system.

- ▸ To resume driving with adaptive cruise control, tap the accelerator pedal or
- ▸ Pull the lever toward you into position (2) ⇨ *page 89, fig. 96*.

Tips

– If adaptive cruise control is active and your vehicle does not start driving as expected after pulling the lever once, you can start out again by tapping the accelerator pedal.
– If an obstacle is detected when your vehicle starts driving, the system will prompt you to take over ⇨ *page 90*. Your vehicle will drive more slowly when starting. This may also happen in some situations when no obstacle is apparent.

Interrupting cruise control

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

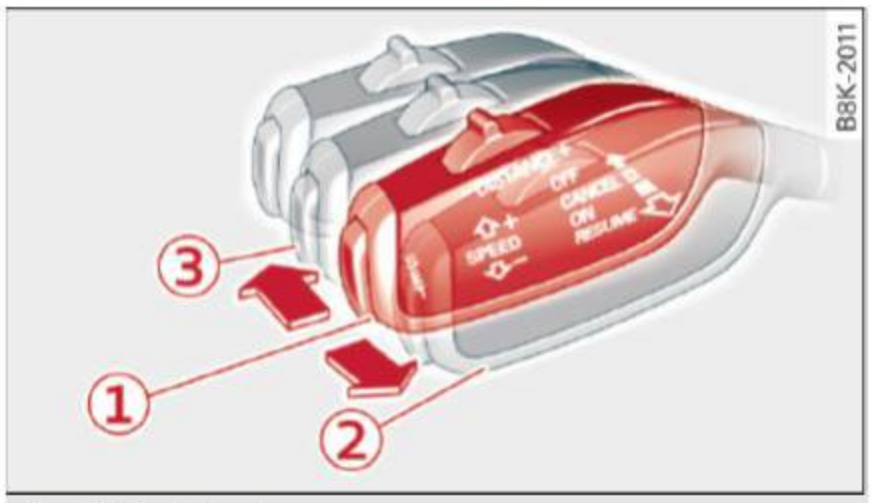


Fig. 96 Selector lever

Requirement: The adaptive cruise control is switched on.

Overriding cruise control

- ▸ To accelerate manually, pull the lever toward you into position (2) and hold it there. The message **ACC: Override** appears. Or
- ▸ press the accelerator pedal.
- ▸ To resume cruise control, release the lever or take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Canceling cruise control while driving

- ▸ Move the lever into position (3). The message **ACC: Standby** appears. Or
- ▸ press the brake pedal.
- ▸ To resume the stored speed, move the lever into position (2).

Canceling cruise control when stopped

- ▸ Push the lever away from you into position (3). The message **ACC: Standby** appears.
- ▸ To resume cruise control, press the brake pedal and pull the lever toward you into position (2).

WARNING

It is dangerous to activate cruise control and resume the stored speed when the current road, traffic or weather conditions do not permit this. This could result in a crash.

Setting the distance

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

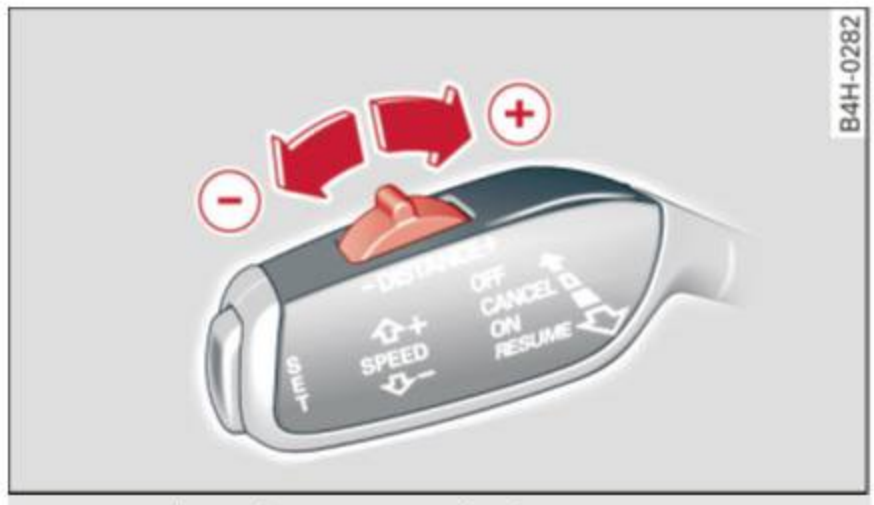


Fig. 97 Selector lever: setting the distance

- ▸ Tap the switch to display the current set distance ⇨ *fig. 97*.
- ▸ To increase or reduce the distance by increments, tap the switch again to the left or right. The distance between the two vehicles will change in the instrument cluster display.

When approaching a moving vehicle up ahead, the adaptive cruise control system automatically brakes to match that object's speed and then maintains the stored distance. If the vehicle ahead accelerates, adaptive cruise control will also accelerate up to the stored speed. ▸

The higher the speed, the greater the distance in yards (meters) ⇨ ⚠. The **Distance 3** setting is recommended.

The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and the how the vehicle ahead is driving, the actual distance may be more or less than these target distances.

The various symbols for the time increments appear briefly in the information line Ⓓ ⇨ *page 87, fig. 94* when you change the settings.

Distance 1: This setting corresponds to a distance of 92 feet/28 meters when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time interval of 1 second.

Distance 2: This setting corresponds to a distance of 118 feet/36 meters when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time interval of 1.3 seconds.

Distance 3: This setting corresponds to a distance of 164 feet/50 meters when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time interval of 1.8 seconds.

Distance 4: This setting corresponds to a distance of 210 feet/64 meters when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time interval of 2.3 seconds.

WARNING

Following other vehicles too closely increases the risk of collisions and serious personal injury.

- Setting short distances to the traffic ahead reduces the time and distance available to bring your vehicle to a safe stop and makes it even more necessary to pay close attention to traffic.
- Always obey applicable traffic laws, use good judgment, and select a safe following distance for the traffic, road and weather conditions.

Tips

- **Distance 3** is set automatically each time you switch the ignition on.
- Your standard settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

▸ Select the desired driving mode in drive select ⇨ *page 101*.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Prompt for driver intervention

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 98 Instrument cluster: request for driver intervention

In certain situations, the system will prompt you to take action. This could happen, for example, if braking by the adaptive cruise control system is not enough to maintain enough distance to the vehicle ahead.

The indicator light and the symbol in the display will warn you about the situation ⇨ *fig. 98*. You will also hear an acoustic signal.

- Press the brake pedal to slow your vehicle down.

Audi braking guard

Description

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 99 Instrument cluster: approach warning

Braking guard uses radar sensors and a video camera. It also functions within the limits of the system when adaptive cruise control is switched off.

What can braking guard do?

When detected in time, the system can assess situations when a vehicle ahead brakes suddenly or if your own vehicle is traveling at a high speed and approaching a vehicle up ahead that is moving more slowly. Braking guard does not react if it cannot detect the situation.

The system advises you of various situations:

– The **distance warning** is given if you are too close to the vehicle ahead for a long time. If the vehicle ahead brakes sharply, you will not be able to avoid a collision. The indicator light in the display comes on.
– The **approach warning** is given when a detected vehicle up ahead in your lane is moving much more slowly than you are or if it brakes sharply. When this warning is given, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking sharply. The indicator light and indicator in the display will warn you about the danger ⇨ *fig. 99*. You will also hear an acoustic signal.

If you do not react fast enough or do not react at all to the situation, braking guard will intervene by braking.

– If a collision is imminent, the system will first provide an **acute warning** by briefly and sharply applying the brakes.
– If you do not react to the acute warning, braking guard can brake with increasing force within the limits of the system. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.
– The system can initiate maximum braking shortly before a collision[1)]. Full deceleration at high speeds occurs only in vehicles with adaptive cruise control and side assist (pre sense plus).
– If the braking guard senses that you are not braking hard enough when a collision is imminent, it can increase the braking force.
– The pre sense functions also engage when a collision is imminent ⇨ *page 185*.

Which functions can be controlled?

You can switch braking guard and the distance/approach warning on or off in the MMI ⇨ *page 92, Settings in the Infotainment system*.

WARNING

Lack of attention can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injuries. The braking guard is an assist system and cannot prevent a collision by itself. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

– Always pay close attention to traffic, even when the braking guard is switched on. Be ready to intervene and be ready to take complete control whenever necessary. Always keep the safe and legal distance between your vehicle and vehicles up ahead.
– Braking guard works within limits and will not respond outside the system limits, for example when approaching a stopped vehicle or stationary obstacle (end of a traffic jam or vehicle that has broken down in traffic).
– Always remember that the radar sensor for the braking guard works only within defined ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.

detection and range limits that may prevent the proper detection of other vehicles.
– The radar sensor's function and range can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy spray. Moving vehicles up ahead may not be promptly detected or may not be detected at all.
– Reflective surfaces including crash barriers or tunnel entrances may impair the function of the radar sensor.

Tips

– You can cancel the braking with increasing force that is initiated by the system by braking yourself, by accelerating noticeably or by swerving.
– Braking guard error messages ⇨ *page 92*.
– Keep in mind that braking guard can brake unexpectedly. Always secure any cargo or objects that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.

Settings in the Infotainment system

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi braking guard**.

System - Switch the braking guard **On**/**Off**. When you switch the ignition on, the message **Braking guard: Off** appears if the system is switched off.

Prewarning - The distance and approach warnings in the display can be switched **On**/**Off**.

Tips

– Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.
– If you restrict or switch off the ESC, the braking guard also switches itself off ⇨ *page 189*.
– Switch braking guard off when you are loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship or other type of transportation. This can prevent undesired warnings from the braking guard system.

Messages

Applies to vehicles: with Audi adaptive cruise control

Braking guard: off

This driver message appears if the system is turned off via the infotainment. Otherwise, if the system is turned off, the information appears every time shortly after the start of the trip.

The driver message also appears if the system is not available due to a malfunction or if the ESC is not switched on ⇨ *page 189*. If this is the case, the system will not provide warnings about a possible collision.

Braking guard: activated

This driver message appears if sharp brake pressure was applied due to an acute warning.

ACC: Unavailable!

ACC and Audi braking guard: not available

The system cannot detect moving vehicles up ahead correctly and is switched off. The sensors have been displaced or are not working properly. The Audi pre sense functions may also be affected. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi service facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

ACC: currently unavailable. No sensor vision

ACC and braking guide: currently unavailable. No sensor vision

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensors ⇨ *page 85, fig. 89*.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Gradient too steep

The road exceeds the maximum possible angle for proper adaptive cruise control operation. Adaptive cruise control is switched off.

ACC: Only available in D, S or M

Select the D/S or M selector lever position.

ACC: currently unavailable. Parking brake applied ▶

The adaptive cruise control system switches off automatically if the parking brake is set.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Stability control (ESC) input.

This message appears if the Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) is working to help stabilize the vehicle. In this case, adaptive cruise control switches off automatically.

ACC off: Manual control!

This message appears when adaptive cruise control cannot set the parking brake. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

• • •

Three white dots appear if a setting cannot be selected with the selector lever. For example, this happens if adaptive cruise control cannot resume driving in stop-and-go traffic because one of the conditions required for ACC to work is not present.

Door open

The adaptive cruise control system cannot switch on when a door is open.

Stationary object ahead

This message appears if you would like to switch adaptive cruise control on and there is a stationary vehicle or obstacle directly ahead of your vehicle.

162.561.4GA.23

Audi active lane assist

Lane assist

Description

Applies to vehicles: with Audi active lane assist

Active lane assist detects lane marker lines within the limits of the system using a camera in the windshield. If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system will warn you with corrective steering. You can override this steering at any time. If you pass over a line, the steering wheel will vibrate lightly. In order for this warning vibration to occur, it must first be switched on in the Infotainment system. Active lane assist is operable when the lane marker line is detected on at least one side of the vehicle.

The system is designed for driving on freeways and expanded highways and thus works only at speeds of 40 mph (65 km/h) or more.

Applies to vehicles with side assist*: If you activate a turn signal when active lane assist is ready and it classifies a lane change as critical because of vehicles traveling alongside you or approaching you, there will be noticeable corrective steering shortly before you leave the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

Applies to vehicles without side assist*: the system does not warn when it is ready if you activate the turn signal before crossing the lane marker line. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

Applies to vehicles with adaptive cruise control* or parking aid*: The corrective steering is targeted based on the driving situation. In addition to the lane marker lines, the system can also take into account other objects such as guard rails. If they are detected in close proximity to the vehicle, active lane assist helps prevent the vehicle from driving too close to them. There is also passing assistance. The system does not provide any corrective steering if it detects that you are passing another vehicle.

WARNING

- The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane, but it does not drive by itself. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.
- Corrective steering may not occur in certain situations, such as during heavy braking.
- There may be cases where the camera does not recognize all lane marker lines. Corrective steering can only take place on the side of the vehicle where lane marker lines are detected.
- Other road structures or objects could possibly be identified unintentionally as lane marker lines. As a result, corrective steering may be unexpected or may not occur.
- The camera view can be restricted, for example by vehicles driving ahead or by rain, snow, heavy spray or light shining into the camera. This can result in active lane assist not detecting the lane marker lines or detecting them incorrectly.
- Under certain conditions such as ruts in the road, a banked roadway or crosswinds, the corrective steering alone may not be enough to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.
- For safety reasons, active lane assist must not be used when there are poor road and/or weather conditions such as slippery roads, fog, gravel, heavy rain, snow and the potential for hydroplaning. Using active lane assist under these conditions may increase the risk of a crash.

Switching on and off

Applies to vehicles: with Audi active lane assist

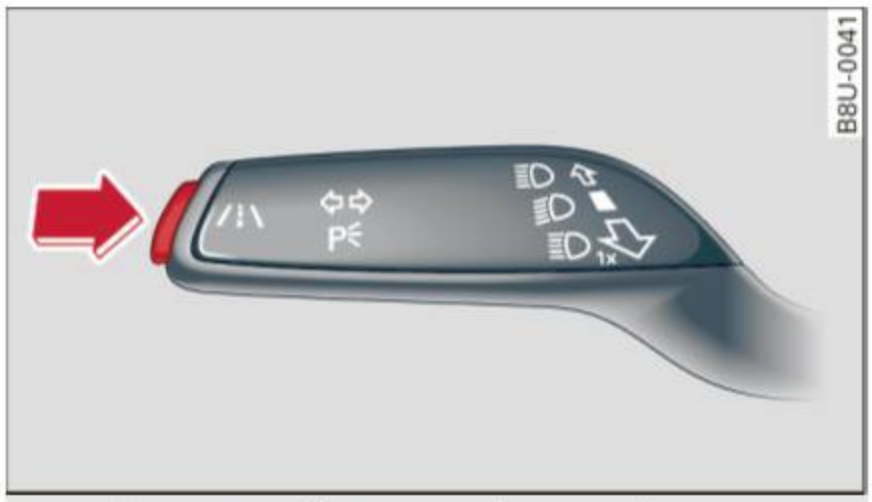


Fig. 100 Turn signal lever: active lane assist button



Fig. 101 Windshield: camera window for active lane assist

▸ Press the ⇨ *fig. 100* button to switch the system on and off. The or indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on or off.

Indicator lights

Ready: The indicator light turns on when the system is ready for use. The system can now be operated.

Not ready: The indicator light turns on if the system is switched on but is inoperable. This may be due to the following reasons:

– There is no lane marker line.
– The relevant lane marker lines are not detected (for example, markings in a construction zone or because they are obstructed by snow, dirt, water or backlighting).
– The vehicle's speed is below the speed needed to activate it, which is about 40 mph (65 km/h).
– The lane is narrower than about 8 ft. (2.5 m) or wider than 15 ft (4.5 m).
– The curve is too sharp.
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel.

Tips

Make sure the camera's field of view ⇨ *fig. 101* is not obstructed by stickers or anything else. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

Lane assist display in the instrument cluster

Applies to vehicles: with Audi active lane assist

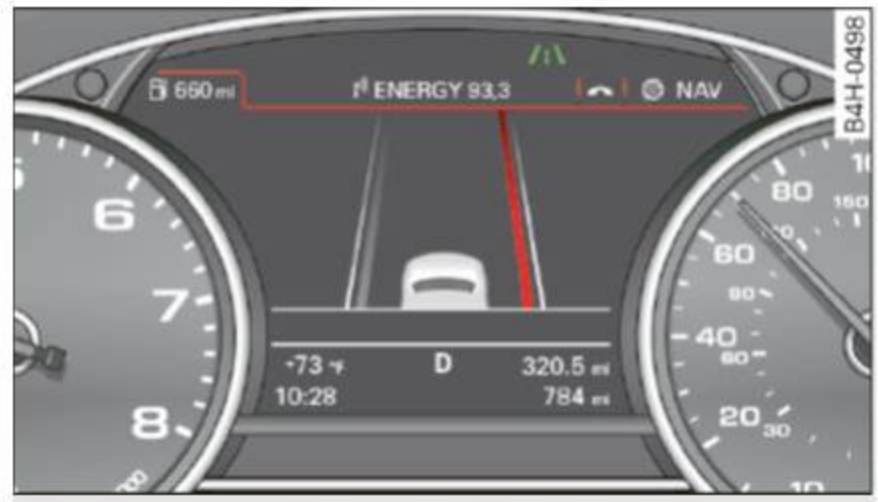


Fig. 102 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on and providing warnings



Fig. 103 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on but not ready to provide warnings

You can call up the active lane assist display using the buttons in the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 23*.

An additional indicator appears in the Head-up display*. ▶

White line(s)	Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings.
Red line(s) (left or right)	Active lane assist warns you before leaving a lane ⇨ *fig. 102*. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates lightly.
Gray line(s)	Active lane assist is activated, but not ready to give warning ⇨ *fig. 103*.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

If the active lane assist switches off automatically, the indicator light in the display turns off and one of the following messages appears:

Audi active lane assist: Currently unavailable. No camera view

This message appears if the camera is unable to detect the lines. This could happen if:

– The camera field of view ⇨ *page 95, fig. 101* is dirty or covered in ice. Clean this area on the windshield.
– The camera field of view is fogged over. Wait until the fog has cleared before switching the active lane assist on again.
– The system has been unable to detect the lanes for an extended period of time due to road conditions. Switch the active lane assist back on when the lines are more visible.

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable

There is a temporary active lane assist malfunction. Try switching the active lane assist on again later.

Audi active lane assist: system fault!

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi active lane assist: Please take over steering

This message appears if you are not steering by yourself. If this is the case, active lane assist does not switch off, but it is “not ready” to provide a warning. The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane. However, you are responsible for driving the vehicle and must steer it yourself.

Adjusting the vibration warning

Applies to vehicles: with Audi active lane assist

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)** * **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi active lane assist**.

You can switch the additional vibrating warning in the steering wheel on or off.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Audi side assist

Side assist

Description

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

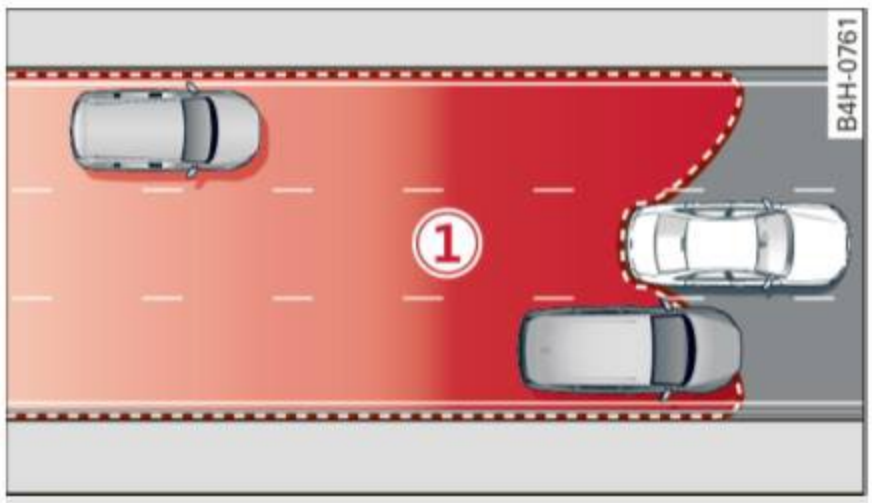


Fig. 104 Sensor detection range

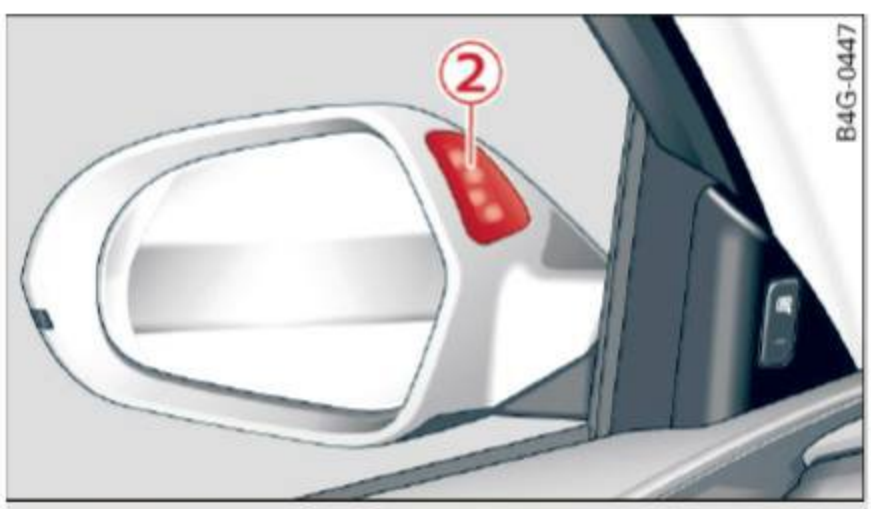


Fig. 105 Display on the exterior mirror

Side assist helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with your within sensor range ① ⇨ *fig. 104*: If a lane change is classified as critical, the display ② in the exterior mirror turns on ⇨ *fig. 105*.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist *informs* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the mirror turns on, but is dim.

The display remains dim in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

Warning stage

If the display in a mirror blinks brightly when you activate a turn signal, side assist is *warning* you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the rearview mirror and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 98*.

Applies to vehicles with active lane assist*: The display in the mirror can also blink if you have not activated a turn signal: If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears you will be leaving the lane, side assist will warn you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical.

Tips

You can adjust the brightness on of the display on the rearview mirror ⇨ *page 99*.

General information

Applies to vehicles: with side assist

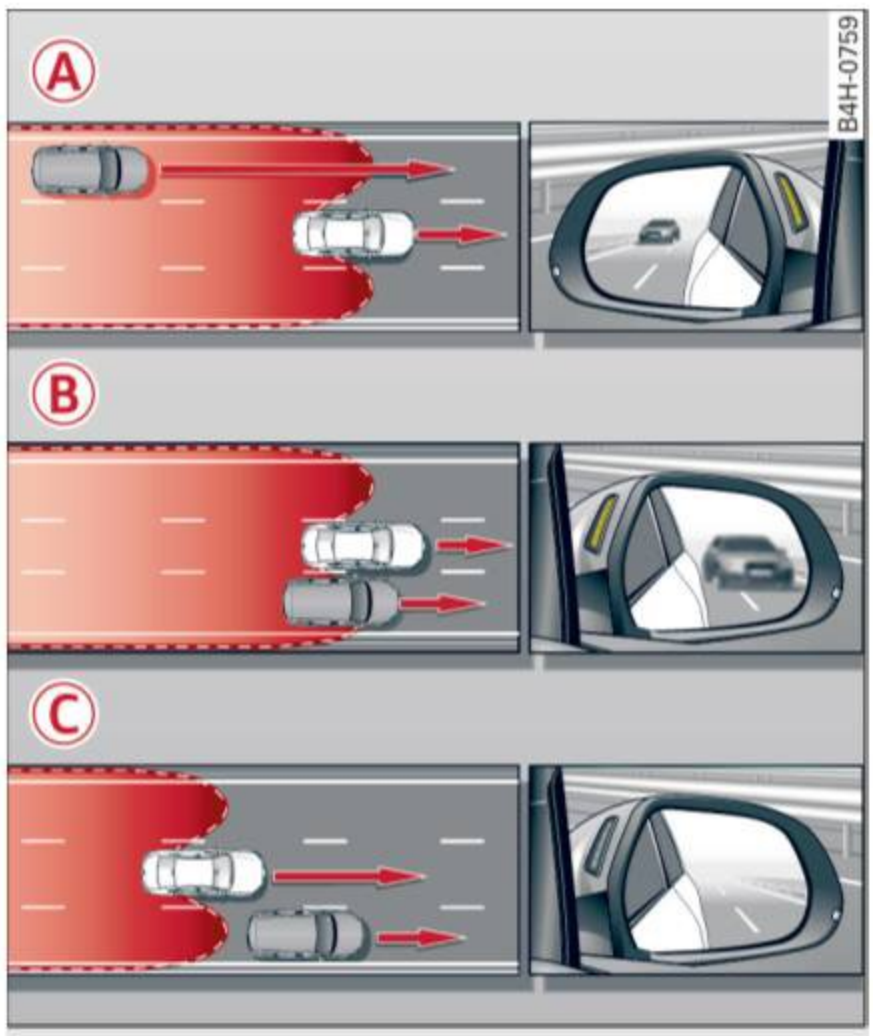


Fig. 106 Driving situations



Fig. 107 Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

① Vehicles that are approaching

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

② Vehicles traveling with you

Vehicles traveling with you are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist are indicated by the time they enter your "blind spot", at the latest.

③ Vehicles left behind

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than 9 mph or 15 km/h), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is greater than 9 mph or 15 km/h).

Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In certain situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example:

– if the lanes are narrow or if your are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the system may have detected the vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
– if you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
– if side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
– In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 107* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because this will affect the function. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

WARNING

– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers. ▶

– Improper reliance on the side assist system can cause collisions and serious personal injury:
  – Never rely only on side assist when changing lanes.
  – Always check rear view mirrors to make sure that it is safe to change lanes.
– Side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions- danger of accident!
– Please note that side assist indicates there are approaching vehicles, or vehicles in your blind spot, only after your vehicle has reached a driving speed of at least 19 mph (30 km/h).
– In certain situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example:
  – if vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
  – in poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
  – on very wide lanes, in tight curves or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can affect the system. Have your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be misinterpreted.
– For Declaration of Compliance to United States FCC and Industry Canada regulations ⇨ *page 277*.

Switching on and off

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

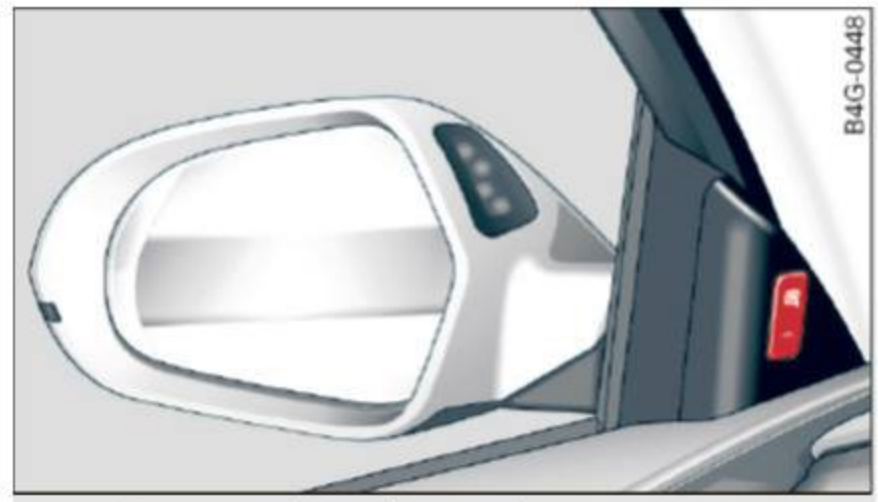


Fig. 108 Driver's door: side assist button

▸ Press the ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 98* button to switch the system on and off. The LED in the button turns on when side assist is switched on.

Adjusting the display brightness

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

The display brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**.

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the display is already set to the minimum or maximum level by the automatic adjustment. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change.

Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view forward. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage adjustment. ▶

Tips

- Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Driver messages

Applies to vehicles: with Audi side assist

If side assist switches off by itself, the LED in the button turns off and a message will appear in the instrument cluster display:

Audi side assist not available: sensor blocked

The radar sensors' vision is affected. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area in front of the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 98, fig. 107*.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable

Side assist cannot be switched on temporarily because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

Audi side assist: System fault!

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it is switched off. The sensors have been displaced or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

Audi side assist: Unavailable when towing

Side assist switches off automatically when a factory-installed trailer hitch is connected to the electrical connector on the trailer. There is no guarantee the system will switch off when using a retrofitted trailer hitch. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer.

Audi drive select

Driving settings

Introduction

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle settings in one vehicle. The driver can select **Comfort**, **Auto** and **Dynamic** modes in the Infotainment system to switch between a sporty and a comfortable driving mode. In the **Individual** mode, the settings can be adjusted to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine tuning with light steering.

WARNING

Improper use of the Audi drive select can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.

Description

The following systems are affected by drive select:

Engine and transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and the transmission respond quicker or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements. In the sporty dynamic mode, the transmission shifts at higher RPMs.

Air suspension*

The adaptive air suspension/adaptive air suspension sport* (**Air suspension** in the MMI) is an electronically controlled air suspension and damping system. They are adjusted depending on the selected driving mode, the driver's steering, braking and acceleration input and the road surface, vehicle speed and load. A sporty setting is generally used in vehicles with adaptive air suspension sport*.

The vehicle clearance varies depending on the selected mode and the speed.

The highway setting is activated automatically when you drive above 75 mph (120 km/h) for more than 30 seconds in the **Auto** or **Dynamic** mode. The ground clearance is increased automatically if the speed drops below 44 mph (70 km/h) for more than 120 seconds.

Steering

The steering adapts in terms of steering effort and steering ratios. Indirect steering that moves easily, like the steering in comfort mode, is best suited to long drives on a highway. In contrast, dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

The following applies to vehicles with dynamic steering*: the steering ratio changes based on vehicle speed in order to maintain optimum steering effort for the driver at all times. This sets the steering to be less sensitive at higher speeds in order to provide improved vehicle control. At reduced speeds, however, steering is more direct in order to keep the steering effort as minimal as possible when the driver is maneuvering the vehicle. At low and average speeds, dynamic steering additionally provides more responsive steering performance.

Sport differential*

As a component of the all wheel drive system (quattro) ⇨ *page 192*, the Sport differential* distributes the driving power to the rear axle depending on the situation. The distribution of power varies depending on the selected mode, from balanced (comfort) to agile (dynamic). The goal is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering.

Curve light*

The curve light adapts to driving on curves. The pivoting action and the lighting are also adapted to the mode.

Adaptive cruise control*

The behavior when accelerating can be adjusted from comfortable to sporty, depending on the drive select mode. Adaptive cruise control also responds to the driving behavior of the vehicle ahead in a more conservative or sporty manner. ▶

162.561.4GA.23

Engine sound*

The sound of the engine is adapted to the selected mode and ranges from subtle to sporty.

Note

– Make sure there is enough clearance above and below the vehicle when parking. The height of the vehicle can change once it is parked due to temperature fluctuations, changes to the load conditions and changes to the driving modes, which can affect clearance.
– When transporting the vehicle on a car carrier, train, ship or by other means, only tie the vehicle down at the running surface of the tires, which is the outer circumference. Securing the vehicle at the axle components, suspension struts or towing eyes is not permitted because the pressure in the air suspension struts can change during transport. The vehicle may not be secured sufficiently if this happens.
– If you are going to tow a trailer, you must activate the trailer operation mode ⇨ *page 201*.

Tips

– In some models, the maximum vehicle speed can only be reached in the **Auto** and **Dynamic** modes.
– Selecting the **Dynamic** mode results in sporty shifting characteristics. The S gear position engages automatically.
– In vehicles with sport differential*, the **Dynamic** mode is deactivated when towing a trailer.
– In vehicles that have dynamic steering*, operating noise is heard when starting or stopping the engine. This does not indicate a problem.

Selecting the driving mode

You can choose between comfort, auto, dynamic and individual.

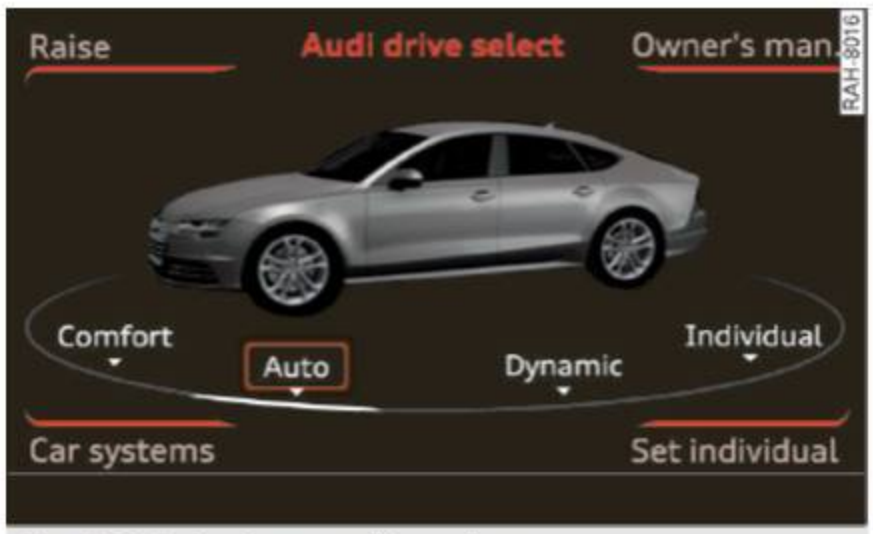


Fig. 109 Infotainment: drive select

▸ To select the mode, select the following in the Infotainment system: CAR function button > **Comfort**, **Auto**, **Dynamic** or **Individual**.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine.

Comfort - provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

Auto - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for every day use.

Dynamic - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

Individual - ⇨ *page 102*.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic when operating the drive select to reduce the risk of an accident.

Adjusting the Individual mode

You can adjust the vehicle settings to your personal preferences.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Set individual** control button. Once you select the menu, you will automatically drive in the **Individual** mode. ▶

After you have closed the settings, you are automatically driving in the **Individual** driving mode.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust. The following table gives an overview of the characteristics.

Systems	Comfort	Auto	Dynamic
Engine/Transmission	balanced	balanced	sporty
air suspension*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Steering	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Dynamic steering*	comfortable/indirect	balanced/direct	sporty/direct
Sport differential*	balanced	agile	sporty
Adaptive cruise control*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Engine sound*	subtle	subtle/sporty[a)]	sporty

a) Subtle in the selector lever position D and sporty in S.

Tips

Your **Individual** mode settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Raising/lowering the vehicle

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive air suspension

Raising the vehicle

You can raise your vehicle temporarily, for example to drive over a tall curb.

- ▸ Select the following in the Infotainment system: the CAR function button > **Raise** control button.
- ▸ Wait for the arrows in the Infotainment system display to stop blinking and the vehicle to reach its final position.

Lowering the vehicle

- ▸ To lower the vehicle, select the following in the Infotainment system: the CAR function button > **Lower** control button.
- ▸ Wait for the arrows in the Infotainment system display to stop blinking and the vehicle to lower completely.

Note

– Remember that your vehicle is not suitable for driving offroad even when it is raised. There is not enough ground clearance.

– If the vehicle is raised, it will lower automatically when driving 62 mph (100 km/h) or faster.

Driver messages

Applies to vehicles: with adaptive air suspension

Air suspension: Vehicle is too high. Controlling level...

Air suspension: Vehicle is too low. Controlling level...

The driver message switches off when the level control process is complete.

Night vision assist

Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal highlighting

Description

Applies to vehicles: with night vision assist

The night vision assist can detect, highlight and, if necessary, warn about pedestrians and large wild animals.

Night vision assistant with pedestrian and wild animal detection assists you in darkness by using an infrared camera to monitor the area in front of your vehicle, within the limits of the system. It can display objects up to approximately 1000 feet (300 meters) away. The heat image detected by the camera is shown in the instrument cluster display. Warm areas appear lighter and cold areas appear darker.

Highlighting detected pedestrians and wild animals

Applies to vehicles: with night vision assist



Fig. 110 Instrument cluster: Yellow pedestrian highlighting

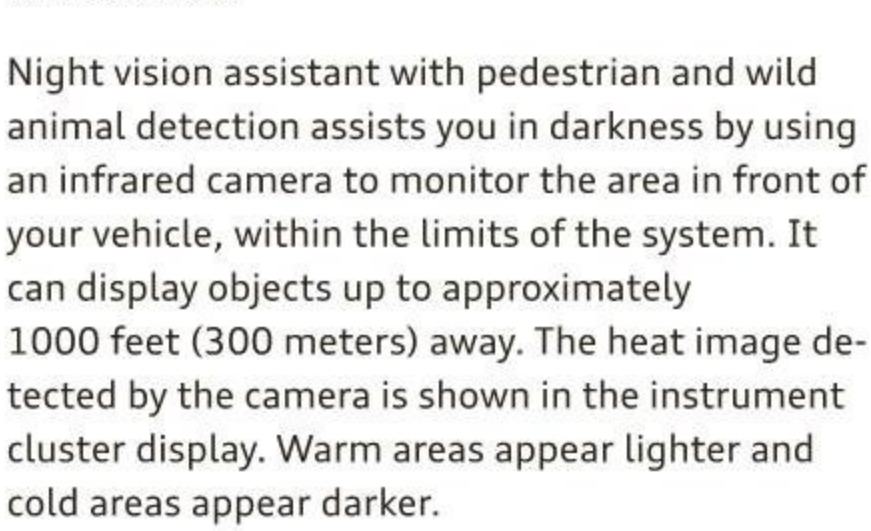


Fig. 111 Instrument cluster: symbol when infrared image is not visible

Within the limits of the system, night vision assistant can detect pedestrians and wild animals that are within the detection range between approximately 32 feet (10 meters) and 295 feet (90 meters) in front of the vehicle. When it is dark outside and the headlights are switched on, detected pedestrians and wild animals are marked in yellow ⇨ *fig. 110* within the limits of the system ⇨ *page 105*. Wild animal detection is not active in built-up areas. The system only detects large wild animals such as deer.

Tips

If another display such as navigation replaces the image from the night vision assist the symbol appears in a tab ⇨ *fig. 111*. You can access night vision assist using the buttons in the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 24*.

Pedestrian and wild animal warning

Applies to vehicles: with night vision assist

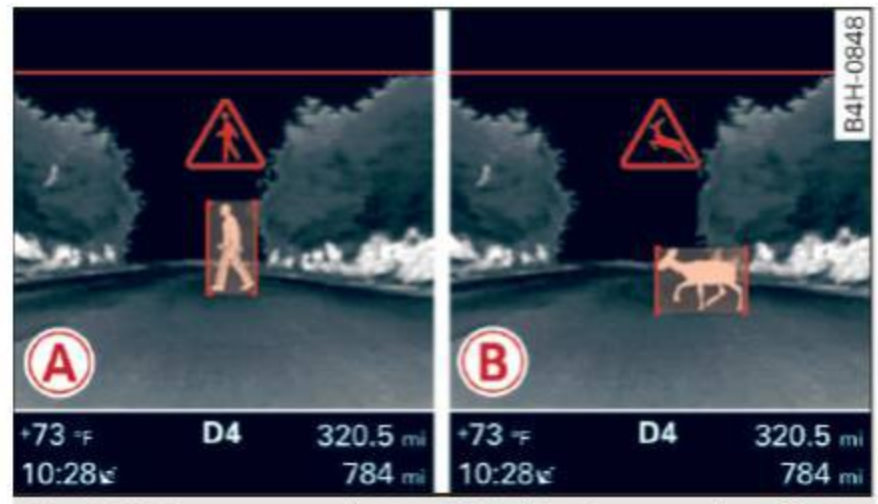


Fig. 112 Instrument cluster: (A) Pedestrian warning, (B) wild animal warning



Fig. 113 Instrument cluster: (A) Pedestrian warning/(B) wild animal warning, when the image from the night vision assist is not selected in the instrument cluster display

Display in the instrument cluster/head-up display*

If there are pedestrians or wild animals in an area in front of your vehicle that is classified as critical, the system will direct your attention to this:

– Pedestrians or wild animals are highlighted in red and the corresponding symbol or turns on ⇨ *fig. 112*.
– There is also a tone.

The area classified as critical is based on the vehicle speed and the steering wheel angle. Pedestrian and wild animal warning encourages you to pay more attention.

If the night vision assist image is replaced by another display (such as the on-board computer), the red indicator light or will appear if there is a pedestrian or wild animal warning ⇨ *fig. 113*.

If the head-up display* is switched on and the night vision assist content is activated, or will appear in the head-up display*.

Marking light*

To direct the driver's attention to a pedestrian, the headlights can flash on the pedestrian three times in a row when there is a pedestrian warning.

This happens at speeds above approximately 35 mph (60 km/h) when you are traveling outside of well-lit areas and when flashing the headlights will not create glare for a vehicle detected in the oncoming lane. The marker light* is controlled by the high beam assist* ⇨ *page 44, High beam assist*.

The marking light is not used for wild animals.

General information

Applies to vehicles: with night vision assist



Fig. 114 Front of the vehicle: night vision camera

The following situations may affect the function of the night vision assist system:

– Poor visibility such as snow, rain, fog or heavy spray
– Dirty lens on the night vision assist camera

Make sure the night vision assist camera ⇨ *fig. 114* is not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions because that can affect the camera function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

Pedestrian and wild animal detection depends on the difference in temperature between the person/wild animal and the background area. Pedestrians/wild animals may not be detected if the difference is too small. Pedestrian and wild animal marking and the marker light* are deactivated at temperatures above approximately 77 °F (25 °C) and when it is light outside. When the night vision assistant image is selected in the instrument cluster display, the symbol appears in the upper right.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when night vision assist is switched on. As the driver, you are always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.

– Night vision assist can only warn about people and wild animals located within the visual range of the infrared camera. The visual range corresponds to the image in the instrument cluster display. ▶

- Night vision assist may not detect people or wild animals and mark them if
  - they are not in an upright position, for example if they are sitting or lying down and/or
  - the silhouette in the display appears incomplete or interrupted, for example because the person is partially covered by a vehicle or an animal by tall grass. This could increase the risk of an accident.
- Never try to swerve around animals if doing so will endanger you or other road users, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

- Even though the system evaluates the shape and heat given off by all detected objects, there are limits to the system. There may be false warnings.
- For technical reasons, the image pauses in split second intervals.

Switching on/off

Applies to vehicles: with night vision assist



Fig. 115 Area around the light switch: night vision assist button

Requirement: Switch the ignition on and turn the light switch to the **AUTO** position or.

- Press the button ⇨ *fig. 115*. The heat image from the night vision camera appears in the instrument cluster display.
- Press the button again to switch night vision assist off.

If conditions are bright enough, night vision assist can be switched on without moving the light switch to the **AUTO** position. Pedestrian and wild animal highlighting and warnings are only active when it is dark outside and the headlights are switched on.

Adjusting the contrast

Applies to vehicles: with night vision assist

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Night vision assist contrast**.

When the night vision assist is switched on and the image is visible in the instrument cluster display, you can adjust the contrast in the image from **Min** to **Max**.

Driver messages

Applies to vehicles: with night vision assist

Night vision assist: System fault

The system cannot guarantee correct function and is switched off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Night vision assist: Currently unavailable

The system cannot guarantee correct function temporarily and is switched off.

Night vision assist: Only available at night with lights turned on

Night vision assist only works when it is dark outside and the headlights are on.

Night vision assist: Pedestrian marking currently unavailable

The pedestrian and wild animal highlighting was switched off by the system.

Automatic transmission

S tronic, tiptronic

Introduction

The automatic transmission is controlled electronically. The transmission upshifts or downshifts automatically depending on which drive program is selected.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. The transmission upshifts at a lower RPM and downshifts at a higher RPM to improve fuel efficiency.

The transmission switches to a sporty mode after a kick-down or when the driver uses a **sporty driving style** characterized by quick accelerator pedal movements, heavy acceleration, frequent changes in speed and traveling at the maximum speed.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)** ⇨ *page 111*.

Various automatic transmissions may be installed, depending on the model:

S tronic transmission

The S tronic is a dual-clutch transmission. Power is transferred using two clutches that work independently from one another. They replace the torque converter used in conventional automatic transmissions and allow the vehicle to accelerate without a noticeable interruption in traction.

tiptronic transmission

In the tiptronic transmission, power is transferred by a torque converter.

Selector lever positions



Fig. 116 Display in the instrument cluster: selector lever position

The selector lever position engaged appears next to the selector lever as well as in the instrument cluster display.

P - Park

In this selector lever position the transmission is mechanically locked. Engage P only when the vehicle is *completely stopped* ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 109*.

To shift in or out of position P, you must *first* press and hold the brake pedal *and then* press the release button in the selector lever handle while moving the selector lever to or from P. You can shift out of this position only with the ignition on.

R - Reverse

Select R only when the vehicle is at a *full stop* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 109*.

Before you move the selector lever to R, press *both* the button in the handle of the selector lever *and* the brake pedal at the same time.

When the ignition is on, the backup lights illuminate when the selector lever is moved into R.

N - Neutral

The transmission is in neutral in this position. Shift to this position for standing with the brakes applied ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 109*. ▶

162.561.4GA.23

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h), you must always apply the footbrake before and while moving the lever out of N.

D/S - Normal position for driving forward

In the D/S position, the transmission can be operated either in the normal mode D or in the sport mode S. To select the sport mode S, pull the selector lever back briefly. Pulling the lever back again will select the normal mode D. The instrument cluster display shows the selected driving mode.

In the **normal mode** D, the transmission automatically selects the suitable gear ratio. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style.

Select the **sport mode** S for sporty driving. The vehicle makes full use of the engine's power. Shifting may become noticeable when accelerating.

When the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h), you must always apply the foot brake before and while moving the lever to D/S out of N.

WARNING

Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving the automatic transmission on page 109*.

Note

Coasting downhill with the transmission in N and the engine not running will result in damage to the automatic transmission and possibly the catalytic converter.

Tips

- Audi drive select: you can adjust the sporty shift characteristics in the **Dynamic** driving mode. S will appear in the instrument cluster display instead of D.
- If you accidentally select N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal immediately and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting D/S.
- If there is a power failure, the selector lever will not move out of the P position. The emergency release can be used if this happens ⇨ *page 113*.

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock prevents you from selecting a gear accidentally, causing the vehicle to roll.

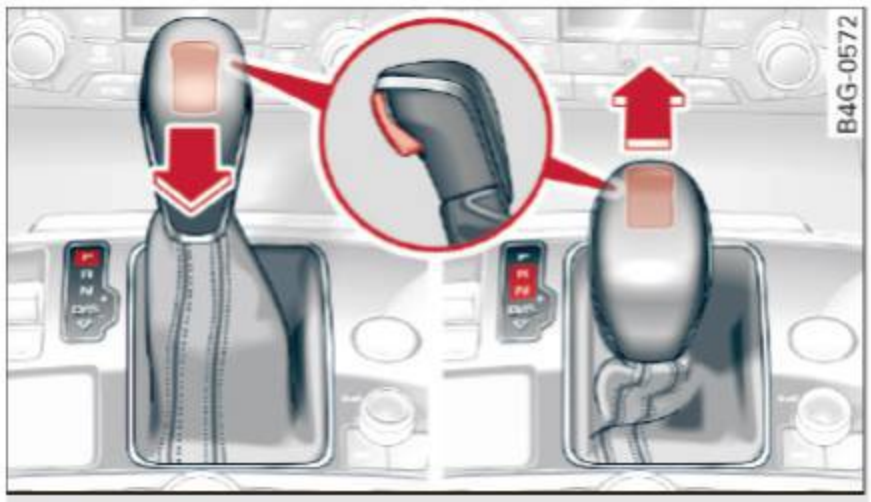


Fig. 117 Selector lever lock

To release the selector lever lock:

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal *while* pressing the interlock button.

Automatic shift lock (ASL)

The selector lever is locked in the P and N positions when the ignition is switched on. The remove it from these positions, the driver must press the brake pedal and press the lock button at the same time. The following message appears in the instrument cluster display when the selector lever is in the P or N position to remind the driver:

Brake pedal must be applied to shift from P

The Automatic Shift Lock only functions when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h). At speeds above about 1 mph (2 km/h) the Automatic Shift Lock is automatically deactivated in the N position.

The selector lever is not locked when shifting quickly through N, for example from R to D. This makes it possible to free the vehicle when it is stuck by "rocking" it. The selector lever lock engages if the lever stays in the N position longer ▶

than 2 seconds when the brake pedal is not pressed.

Lock button

The lock button in the selector lever handle prevents you from moving the selector lever unintentionally while in some selector lever positions. The positions that require the lock button to be pressed are marked in color in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 117*.

Driving the automatic transmission

Starting the engine

- ▸ The selector lever must be in P or N.

Starting off

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press and hold the release button in the selector lever handle, select the desired selector lever position such as D/S and release the button.
- ▸ Wait briefly until the transmission has shifted (you will feel a slight movement).
- ▸ Remove your foot from the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping temporarily

- ▸ Keep the vehicle stationary using the braking pedal, for example at traffic lights.
- ▸ Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
- ▸ To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep inclines ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal.

Stopping/parking

If the selector lever is not in the P position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll. The message **Transmission: Car may roll! Shift to park!** appears.

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- ▸ Apply the parking brake ⇨ *page 78, Parking*.
- ▸ Select the P selector lever position ⇨ ⚠.

Stopping on an incline

- ▸ *Always* press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle in place and prevent it from "rolling back" ⇨ ⚠. Do **not** try to prevent the vehicle from "rolling back" when a gear is engaged by increasing the engine speed ⇨ (!).

Starting on an incline

- ▸ Activate the parking brake.
- ▸ With the driving gear selected, press the accelerator pedal carefully. The parking brake will release automatically if your seat belt is fastened.

Under certain circumstances, such as driving in the mountains, it may be useful to switch temporarily to the manual shift program in order to adjust the gears to the driving conditions by hand ⇨ ⚠.

On slopes, activate the parking brake first and then move the selector lever to the P position. This prevents too much stress from being placed on the locking mechanism.

⚠ WARNING

- – The vehicle can also roll when the engine is stopped.
- – Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious injury.
- – Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear. If you must leave your vehicle when the engine is running, activate the parking brake and move the selector lever to P.
- – Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake when the engine is running and the selector lever is in D/S or R or "tiptronic" mode is selected.
- – Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
- – Never shift into R or P while driving.
- – Before driving down a steep slope, reduce your speed and shift into a lower gear with "tiptronic".

▶

– Do not ride the brakes or press the brake pedal too often or too long when driving down a hill. Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.
– To prevent the vehicle from rolling back when stopping on inclines, always hold it in place with the brake pedal or parking brake.
– Never hold the vehicle on an incline with a slipping clutch. The clutch opens automatically when it becomes too hot from the overload. An indicator lamp illuminates and a driver message appears ⇨ *page 112* when the clutch is overloaded.
– If the engine must remain running, never have any driving position engaged when checking under the hood. Make sure the selector lever has securely engaged and is locked in P with the parking brake set ⇨ *page 218*. Otherwise, any increase in engine speed may set the vehicle in motion, even with the parking brake applied.

Note

– When stopping on an incline, do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal while a driving gear is selected. This can cause the transmission to overheat and can damage it. Activate the parking brake or press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
– Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped and the selector lever is in N will damage the transmission because it is not lubricated under those circumstances.

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is engaged in the buckle.

Hill descent control

Hill descent control assists the driver when driving down hills.

Hill descent control is activated when the selector lever is in the D or S position and you press the brake pedal. The transmission automatically selects a gear that is suitable for the incline. Hill descent control tries to maintain the speed achieved at the time of braking, within physical and technical limitations. If may still be necessary to adjust the speed with the brake pedal.

Hill descent control switches off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with a cruise control system* ⇨ *page 83*, hill descent control is also activated when the speed is set.

WARNING

Hill descent control cannot overcome physical limitations, so it may not be able to maintain a constant speed under all conditions. Always be ready to apply the brakes.

Manual shift program

Using the manual shift program you can manually select gears.

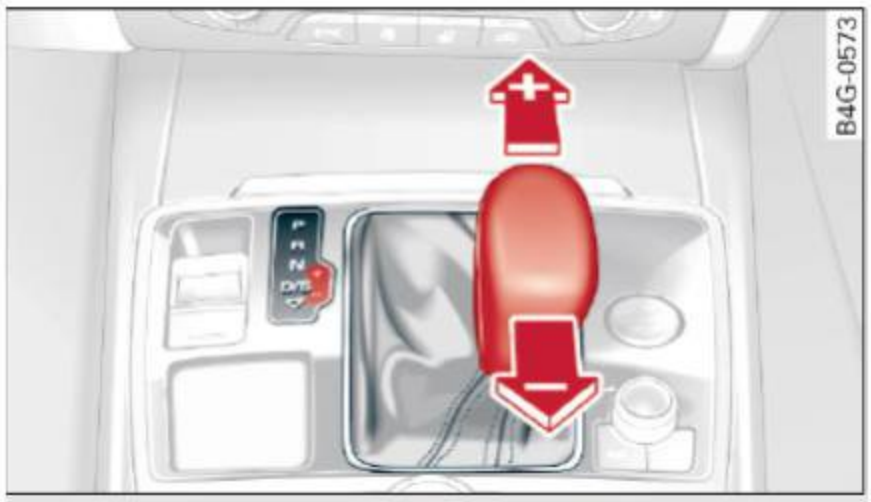


Fig. 118 Center console: shifting the gears manually



Fig. 119 Steering wheel: Shift paddles*

Gear selection with selector lever

The tiptronic mode can be selected either with the vehicle stationary or on the move.

- ▸ Push the selector lever to the right from D/S. An M appears in the instrument cluster display as soon as the transmission has shifted.
- ▸ To upshift, push the selector lever forward to the plus position ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 118*.
- ▸ To downshift, push the lever to the minus position ⊖.

Gear selection with shift paddles*

The shift paddles are activated when the selector lever is in D/S or the tiptronic manual shift program.

- ▸ To upshift, touch the shift paddle on the right ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 119*.
- ▸ To downshift, touch the shift paddle on the left ⊖.

The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.

Tips

- – When you shift into the next lower gear, the transmission will downshift only when there is no possibility of over-revving the engine.
- – When the kick-down comes on, the transmission will shift down to a lower gear, depending on vehicle and engine speeds.
- – Tiptronic is inoperative when the transmission is in the fail-safe mode.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance point, the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed and engine RPM. It shifts up into the next higher gear once the maximum specified engine RPM is reached.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

Launch control program

Applies to vehicles: with S tronic

The launch control program provides the best possible acceleration when starting from a stop.

Requirement: The engine must be at operating temperature and the steering wheel must not be turned.

- ▸ Deactivate the Start-Stop-System* ⇨ *page 82*. The LED in the Ⓐ OFF button turns on.
- ▸ With the engine running, press the OFF button briefly ⇨ *page 189*. The indicator light turns on and the message **Stabilization control (ESC): Off. Warning! Reduced stability** appears in the instrument cluster display.
- ▸ Pull the selector lever back out of the D/S position briefly to select the S position or select the ▶

DYNAMIC driving mode in drive select ⇨ *page 102*.

- ▸ Press the brake pedal firmly with your left food and hold it all the way down for at least 1 second.
- ▸ At the same time, press the gas pedal all the way down with your right foot until the engine reaches and stays at a high RPM level.
- ▸ Remove your foot from the brake pedal within 5 seconds ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.
- Only use the Launch control program when road and traffic conditions allow it and other drivers will not be endangered or bothered by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.
- Please note that the drive wheels can spin and the vehicle can break away when sport mode is switched on, especially when the road is slippery.
- Once the vehicle has started moving, press the OFF button briefly to turn the sport mode off.

Tips

- The transmission temperature may increase significantly after using the launch control program. If that happens, the program may not be available for a few minutes. It will be available again after a cool-down period.
- When accelerating using the launch control program, all vehicle parts are subject to heavy loads. This can lead to increased wear.

Transmission malfunction

Transmission: Please press brake pedal and select gear again.

Press the brake pedal and select the desired selector lever position again. You can then continue driving.

Transmission overheating: Please drive conservatively.

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

Transmission malfunction: you can continue driving

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: You can continue driving with limited functionality

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: No reverse gear. You can continue driving

S tronic transmission: There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: Stop vehicle and shift to park.

Do not continue driving. Select the P selector lever position and see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi service facility for assistance.

Note

If the transmission has switched to emergency mode, drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Selector lever emergency release

If the vehicle's power supply fails, the selector lever can be released in an emergency.



Fig. 120 Front center console: Selector lever emergency release

- ▸ To reach the emergency release mechanism, remove the ashtray insert*.
- ▸ Loosen and remove the small cap in the ashtray mount ⇨ *fig. 120*.
- ▸ You now have access to a pin. Using a screwdriver or similar object, press the pin down and hold it in that position.
- ▸ Press the release button in the selector lever and move it into the N position.

Only move the selector lever out of the P position when the ignition is switched on. If the vehicle must be pushed or towed due to a power failure (for example, the battery is dead), the selector lever must first be moved to the N position using the emergency release mechanism.

Parking systems

General information

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus/rear view camera/peripheral cameras

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **parking system plus** assists you when parking by audibly and visually indicating objects detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 115*.

The **rear view camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. This display assists you when you are cross or parallel parking ⇨ *page 116*. In addition, you are assisted by the functions from the parking system plus ⇨ *page 115*.

The **peripheral cameras** assist you with parking and maneuvering. You are aided by various cameras depending on the vehicle equipment level ⇨ *page 119*. In addition, you are assisted by the functions from the parking system plus ⇨ *page 115*.

WARNING

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and for all other maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of children and animals.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking systems may become impaired as a result. Have your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop check their function.
- Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

Note

- Some objects are not detected by the system under certain circumstances:
  - Objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - Objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - Objects with specific surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow.
- If you continue driving closer to a low-lying object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.

Tips

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or for long grass.
  - external ultrasonic sources e.g. from cleaning vehicles.
  - heavy rain, snow or thick vehicle exhaust.
- We recommend that you practice parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 124*.
- Please refer to the instructions for towing a trailer ⇨ *page 124*.
- What appears in the infotainment display is somewhat time-delayed.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus

Audi parking system plus provides audio and visual signals when parking.

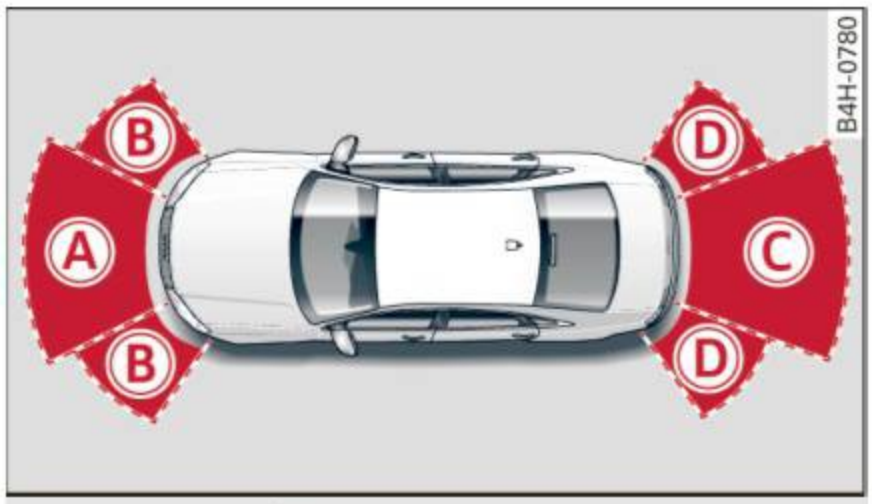


Fig. 121 Display field

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, visual and in some situations audible signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

The display field begins approximately at:

Ⓐ	4 ft (1.20 m)
Ⓑ	3 ft (0.90 m)
Ⓒ	5.2 ft (1.60 m)
Ⓓ	3 ft (0.90 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 ft (0.30 m) away. Do not continue driving farther ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 114*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 114*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this does not apply in the continuous tone range).

Switching on/off

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus



Fig. 122 Center console: parking aid button

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 122*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Visual display

The segments in front of and behind the vehicle help you to determine the distance between you and an obstacle. The red lines* mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 114*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 114*!

Rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with rearview camera

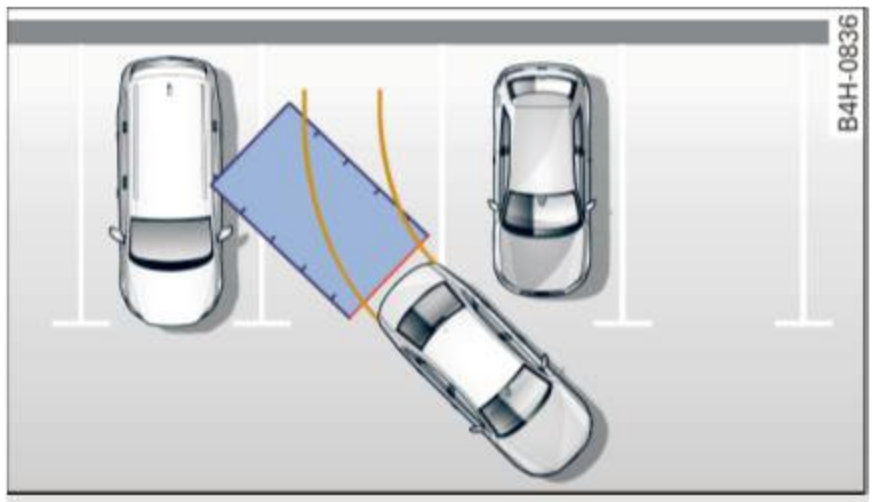


Fig. 123 Illustration: cross parking

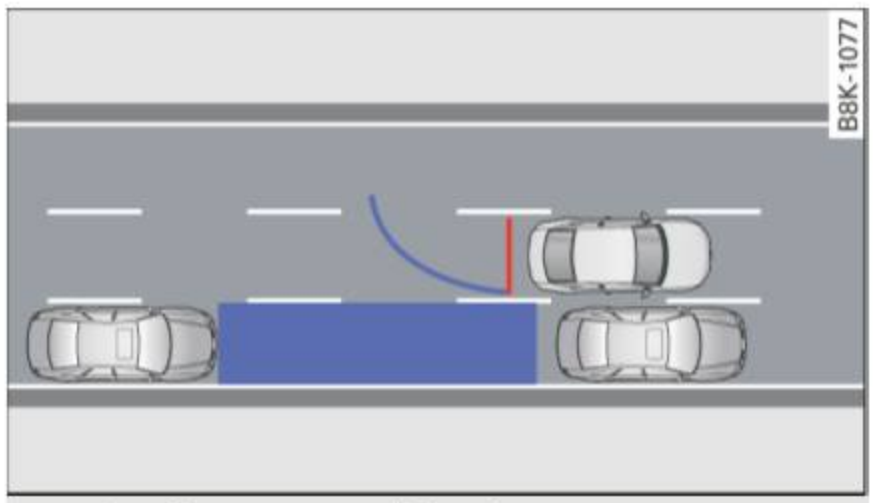


Fig. 124 Illustration: parallel parking

The rearview camera gives you two views: You can use *cross parking* for example, to park in a parking space or in a garage ⇨ *fig. 123*. You can use *parallel parking* if you would like to park on the side of the road ⇨ *fig. 124*.

General information

Applies to vehicles: with rearview camera

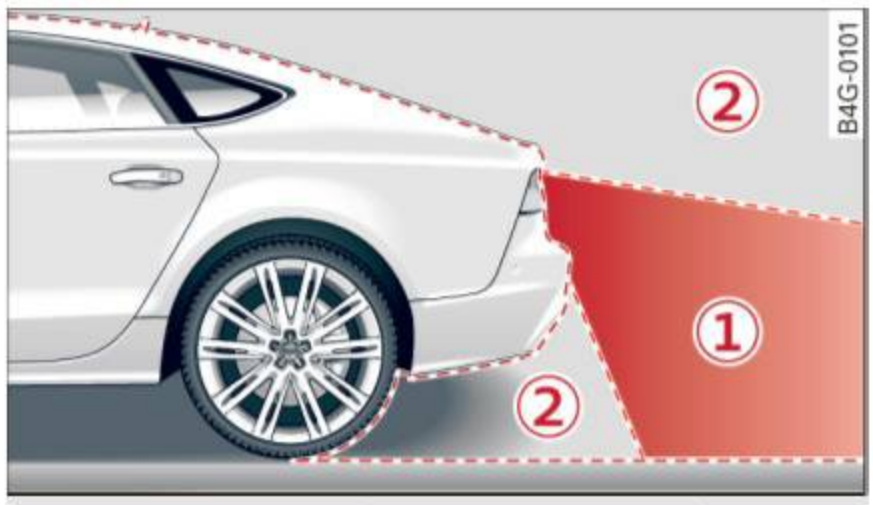


Fig. 125 Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera.



Fig. 126 Luggage compartment lid: Location of the rearview camera

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the parking system ⇨ *fig. 126* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this can affect the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

The rearview camera coverage area includes ① ⇨ *fig. 125*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are outside of this area ② are not displayed.

The accuracy of the orientation lines and the blue surfaces is reduced if the adaptive air suspension* is faulty, if the vehicle is lifted or if the **Dynamic** mode is activated ⇨ *page 101*.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 114*.
- If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example, after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by your Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens or if there is a defect.
- Use the rearview camera only if the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.

▶

– The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen.
– In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or farther away:
  – For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the help lines in this case.
  – If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
  – If driven toward protruding objects.
  – If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

Note

– Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 114*.
– The orange colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path depending on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle front swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that your outside mirror or a corner of your vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Switching on/off

Applies to vehicles: with rearview camera

Switching on

▸ Shift into reverse, or
▸ Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *page 115, fig. 122*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching between the rearview camera and optical display

▸ Press the **Graphic** control button ⑤ ⇨ *page 117, fig. 127* to see the optical display.
▸ Press the **Rear view** control button to see the rearview camera image.

Switching off

▸ Drive forward faster than 10 km/h, or
▸ press the P button, or
▸ Switch the ignition off.

Tips

– The visual display in the left part of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle areas.
– You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 124*.

Cross parking

Applies to vehicles: with rearview camera

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

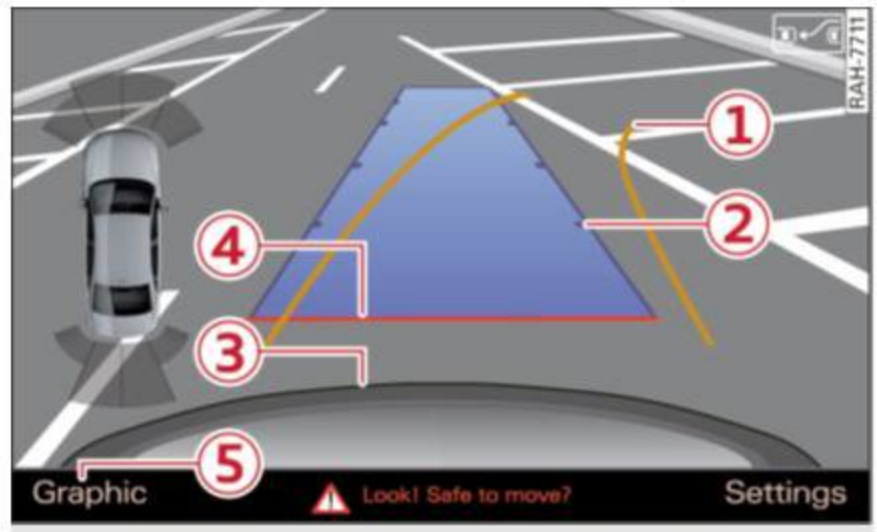


Fig. 127 Infotainment: aiming at a parking spot

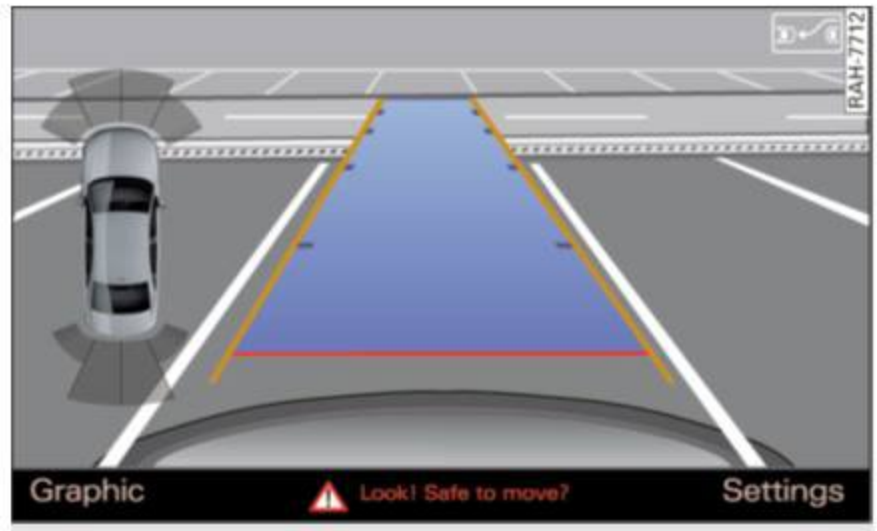


Fig. 128 Infotainment: aligning the vehicle

▸ Turn the Infotainment on and shift into reverse gear.
▸ The orange colored orientation lines ① show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 127*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance from an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. ▸

- ▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space with the aid of the orange orientation lines ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 116*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 117*. ③ displays the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle, at the latest, when the red orientation line ④ borders an object.

Parallel parking

Applies to vehicles: with rearview camera

This view may be used when parallel parking along the side of a street.

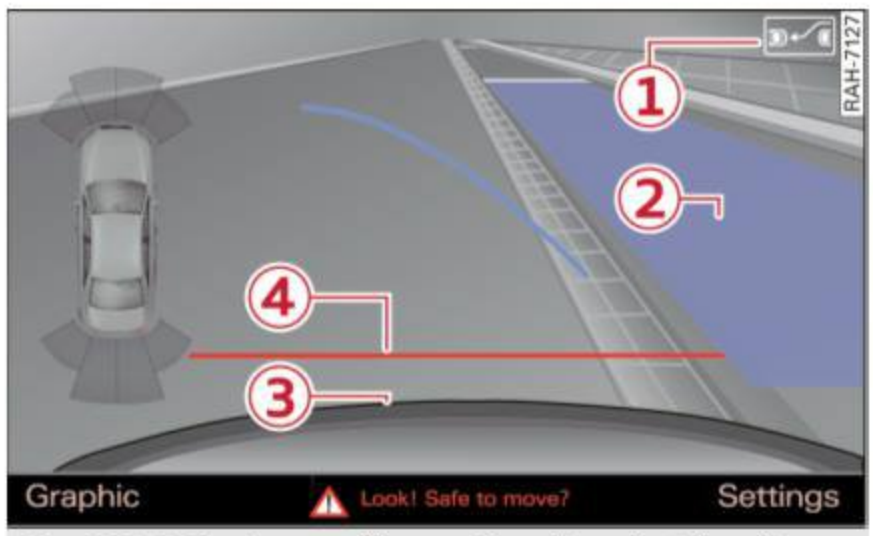


Fig. 129 Infotainment: blue surface aligned with parking spot

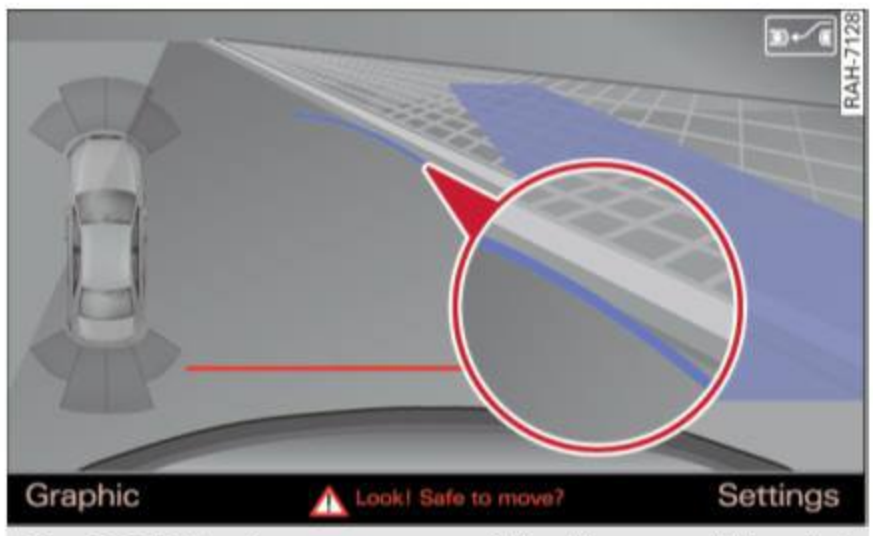


Fig. 130 Infotainment: contact of the blue curved line with the curb

Parking on the right is described here. It is identical when parking on the left.

If there is an obstacle next to the parking space (such as a wall), refer to "Information for parking next to obstacles" ⇨ *page 118*.

- ▸ Activate the turn signal.
- ▸ Position your vehicle next to a parked vehicle in front of the desired parking space. The distance to this vehicle should be approximately 3 ft (1 m).
- ▸ Turn the Infotainment on and shift into reverse gear. The parking system is turned on and the **cross parking** view is displayed.
- ▸ Press the control button on the Infotainment unit ① ⇨ *fig. 129*. The **parallel parking** indicator is displayed.
- ▸ Back up and align your vehicle so the blue area ② borders on the rear end of the vehicle behind you or on the parking space line ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 116*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 117*. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking space.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- ▸ Back up into the parking spot. When the blue curve ⇨ *fig. 130* is near the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 116*, stop the vehicle ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 117*.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- ▸ Continue to back into the parking space until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 116*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 117*. ③ displays the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle, at the latest, when the red orientation line ④ borders an object. Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this.

Parking next to obstacles

When there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking space, choose a space with more space on the sides. Position the long side of the blue surface so that there is sufficient space from the obstacle. The surface must not be touching. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel much earlier. The blue curve ⇨ *fig. 130* must **not** touch the obstacle, but rather there should be enough distance. ▶

Note

Keep enough distance from the curb to avoid damage to the rims.

Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Peripheral cameras

Introduction

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras

With this equipment, die parking system plus* is supplemented with various peripheral cameras ⇨ *page 115*. Depending on vehicle equipment, you are provided with the following views: Around the vehicle, front corner and rear corner, in front of the vehicle and behind the vehicle.

General information

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras

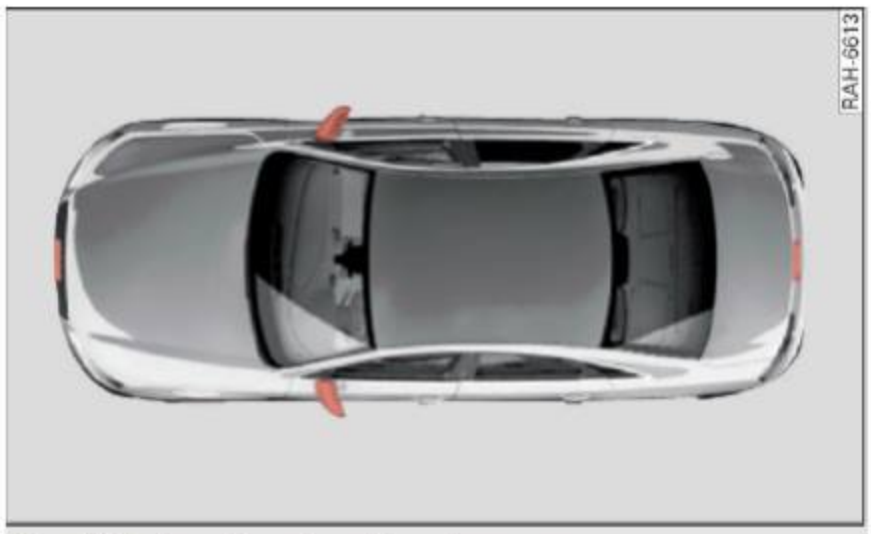


Fig. 131 Location of peripheral cameras

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the peripheral cameras are found in the radiator grille, in the luggage compartment lid and on both exterior mirrors* ⇨ *fig. 131*. Make sure that the lenses are not covered by deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the system. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 205*.

In the **Surrounding** mode, black corners are shown in the vehicle silhouette. Objects in these areas are outside of the camera's field of view and are not detected.

The accuracy of the orientation lines and the blue surfaces is reduced if the adaptive air suspension* is faulty, if the vehicle is lifted or if the **Dynamic** mode is activated ⇨ *page 101*.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 114*.
- If the position or the installation angle of a camera was changed, after a collision for example, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by your Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Keep in mind that the image in the display is distorted if the exterior mirror housing has been manually adjusted.
- Use the **Rear** mode and the **corner view (rear)** mode only when the luggage compartment lid is fully closed. Otherwise the image in the display will be distorted.
- The vehicle surroundings are shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.
- Camera lenses enlarge and distort the field of vision. The objects appear both altered and inaccurate on the screen.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 114*.
- The Infotainment display shows the direction in which the rear of the vehicle is traveling based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle front swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that your outside mirror or a corner of your vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Tips

If the /// symbol appears in the display and the respective display area is grayed out, then the power exterior mirrors were folded in or the driver's door/front ▶

passenger's door/luggage compartment lid was opened.

Switching on or off

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras



Fig. 132 Center console: Button P

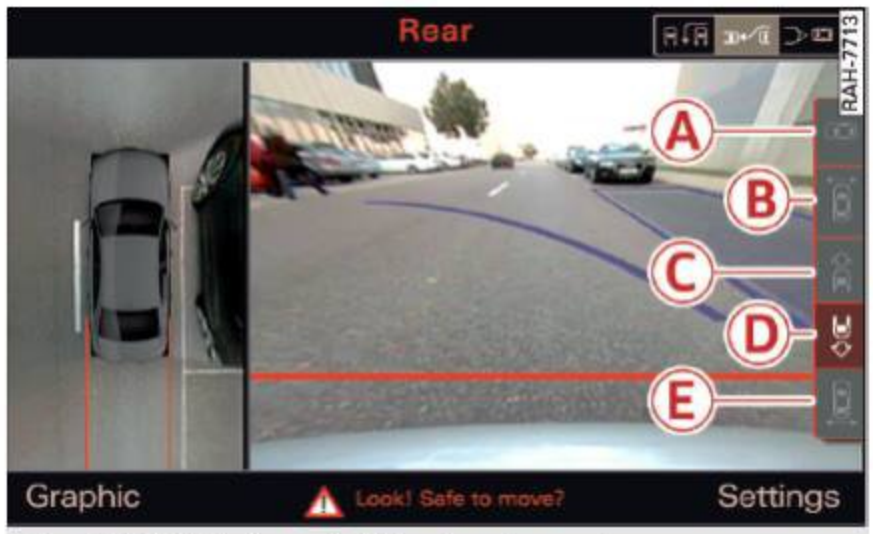


Fig. 133 Infotainment: Selecting the mode

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 132*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Selecting the mode

- Turn the control knob to the symbol for the desired mode Ⓐ through Ⓔ ⇨ *fig. 133* and press the control knob.

Switching off

- Drive forward faster than 10 km/h, or
- press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

You may select from the following modes:

Ⓐ - peripheral ⇨ *page 120*

Ⓑ - corner view (front) ⇨ *page 121*

Ⓒ - front ⇨ *page 121*

Ⓓ - rear ⇨ *page 121*

Ⓔ - corner view (rear) ⇨ *page 121*

Peripheral

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras

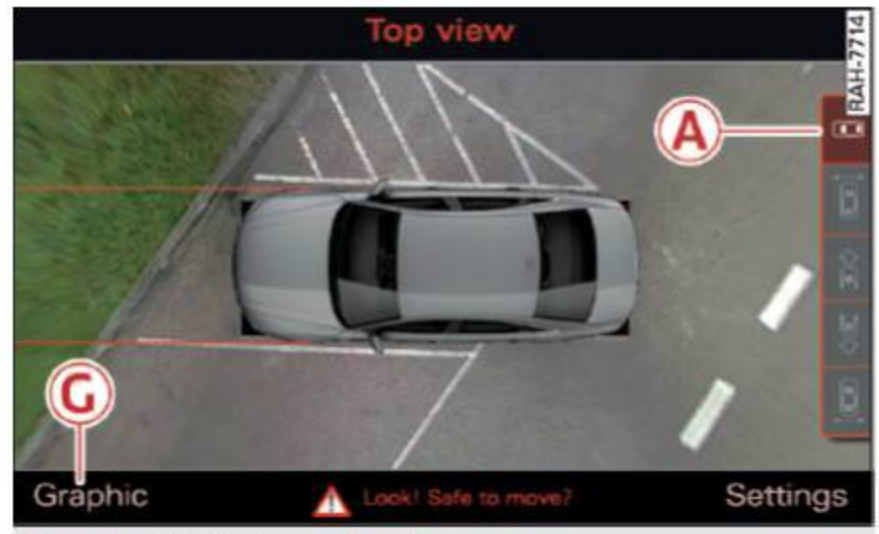


Fig. 134 Infotainment: peripheral mode

This view is ideal for maneuvering. The vehicle surroundings are shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system.

Selecting peripheral

- Select the Ⓐ symbol with the control knob and press the control knob.

Switching between optical view and camera image[1)]

- Press the **Graphic** Ⓖ control button to see the optical display.
- To display the camera image, press the **Camera** control button.

1) The camera image is not shown for all versions.

Corner view (front)/corner view (rear)

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras

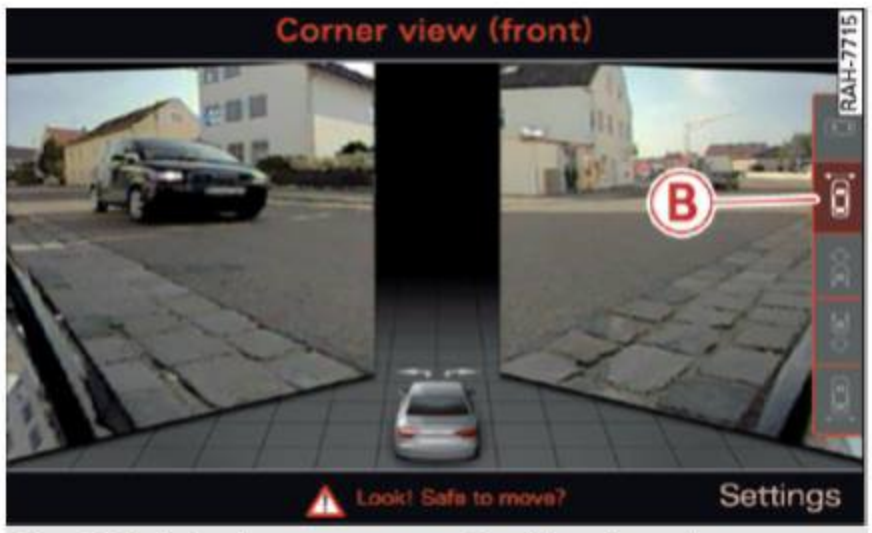


Fig. 135 Infotainment: corner view (front) mode



Fig. 136 Infotainment: corner view (rear) mode

This view can assist you for example, when you are exiting from an area with poor visibility. The area at the front and rear sides of the vehicles is displayed.

- ▸ To show the side view toward the front, select the symbol Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 135* with the control knob and press the control knob.
- ▸ To show the side view toward the rear, select the symbol Ⓔ ⇨ *fig. 136* with the control knob and press the control knob.

Front

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras

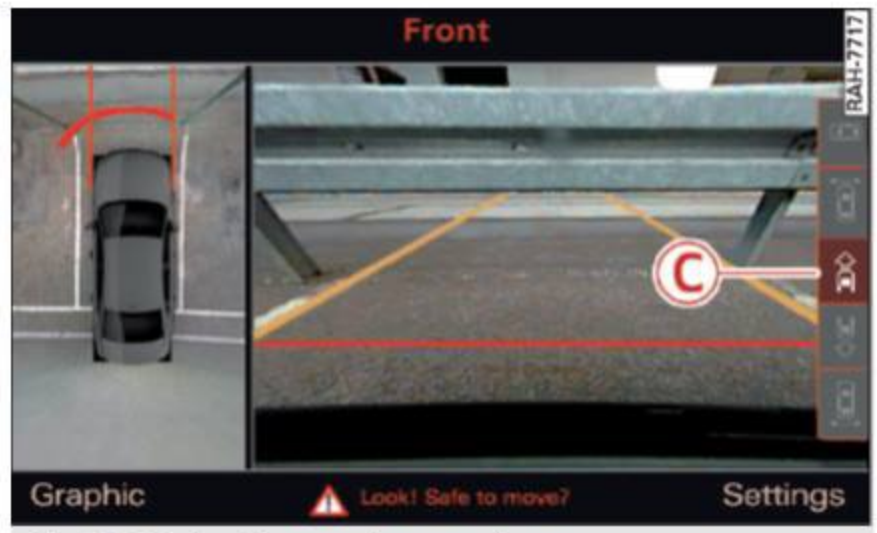


Fig. 137 Infotainment: front mode

This view assists you for example, in using the full maneuvering range in front of the vehicle. The area in front of the vehicle is displayed. The vehicle surroundings are shown in the left area of the display. You can switch between optical display and camera image ⇨ *page 120*.

- ▸ Select the Ⓒ symbol with the control knob. The orange orientation lines mark the expected path of the vehicle. Stop the vehicle at the latest when the red orientation line* borders an object ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*.

Rear

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras

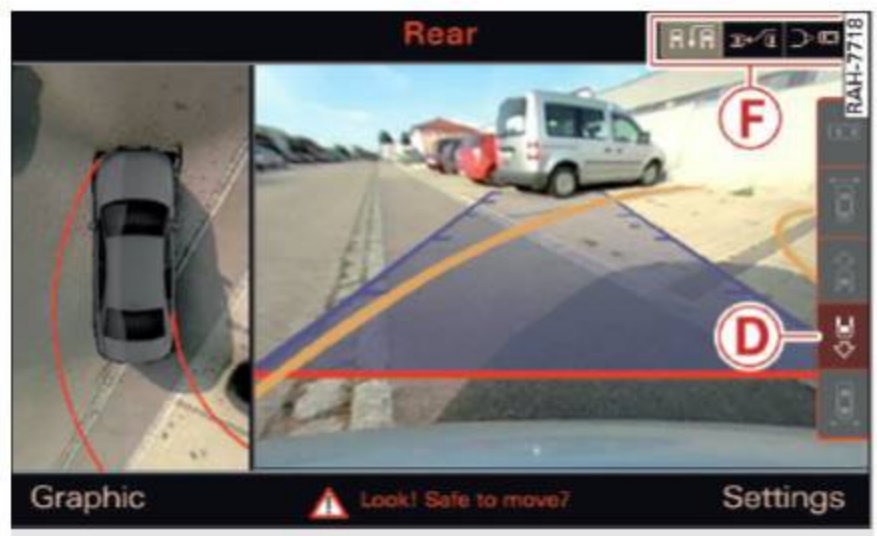


Fig. 138 Infotainment: rear mode

This view assists you for example, in using the full maneuvering range behind the vehicle. The area behind the vehicle is displayed. The vehicle surroundings are shown in the left area of the display. You can switch between optical display and camera image ⇨ *page 120*. ▶

▸ Select the Ⓓ symbol with the control knob.

You can choose between three different views in this mode.

▸ To cross park, parallel park or position the vehicle in front of a trailer*, press the control button Ⓕ on the control panel repeatedly until the symbol for the desired mode is selected.

Cross parking

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.



Fig. 139 Infotainment: aiming at a parking spot

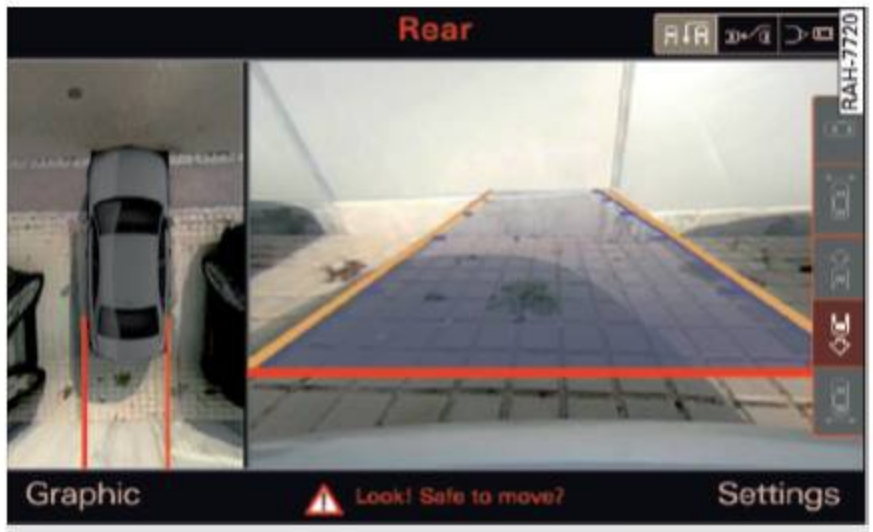


Fig. 140 Infotainment: aligning the vehicle

Requirement: Cross parking is selected ⇨ *page 121*.

▸ The orange colored orientation lines ① show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 139*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance from an obstacle. Each marking represents about 1 meter. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 5 meters to the rear.

▸ While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space with the aid of the orange orientation lines ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 119*. ③ displays the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an obstacle ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 116*.

Parallel parking

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras

This view may be used when parallel parking along the side of a street.



Fig. 141 Infotainment: blue surface aligned with parking spot

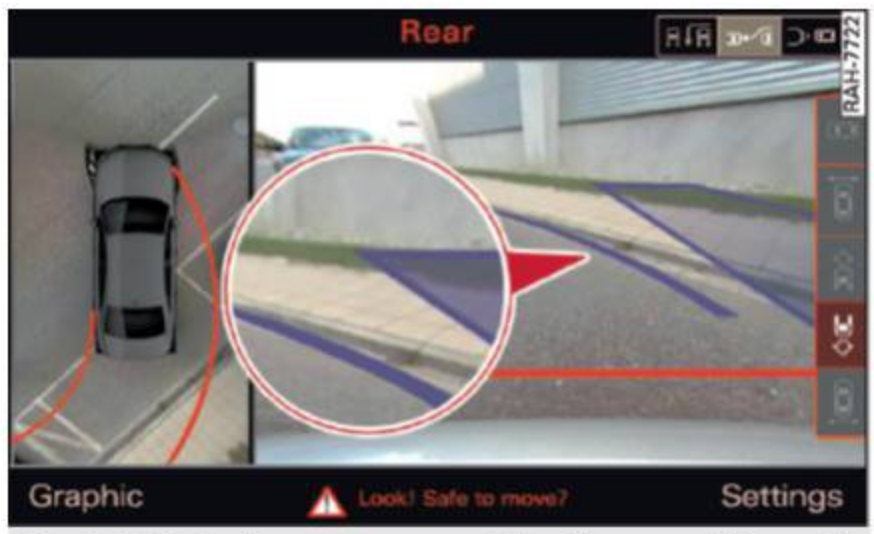


Fig. 142 Infotainment: contact of the blue curved line with the curb

Parking on the right is described here. It is identical when parking on the left.

If there is an obstacle next to the parking space (such as a wall), refer to Information for parking next to obstacles ⇨ *page 123*.

▸ Activate the turn signal.

▸ Position your vehicle next to a parked vehicle in front of the desired parking space. The distance ▶

to this vehicle should be approximately 3 ft (1 m).

- ▸ Turn the Infotainment on and shift into reverse gear. The parking system is turned on and the **cross parking** view is displayed.
- ▸ Press the control button on the Infotainment unit ① ⇨ *page 118, fig. 129*. The **parallel parking** indicator is displayed.
- ▸ Back up and align your vehicle so the blue area ② borders on the rear end of the vehicle behind you or on the parking space line ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 119*. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking space.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- ▸ Back into the parking space until the blue curve ⇨ *page 118, fig. 130* touches the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 119*. Stop the vehicle.
- ▸ With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- ▸ Continue to back into the parking space until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 119*. ③ displays the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle, at the latest, when the red orientation line ④ borders an object. Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this.

Parking next to obstacles

When there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking space, choose a space with more space on the sides. Position the long side of the blue area so that there is sufficient space from the object. The area must not be on the curb. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel much earlier. The blue curve ⇨ *page 118, fig. 130* must **not** touch the obstacle, but rather there should be enough distance.

Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Trailer mode

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras and trailer hitch

This view assists you in positioning the vehicle in front of a trailer.

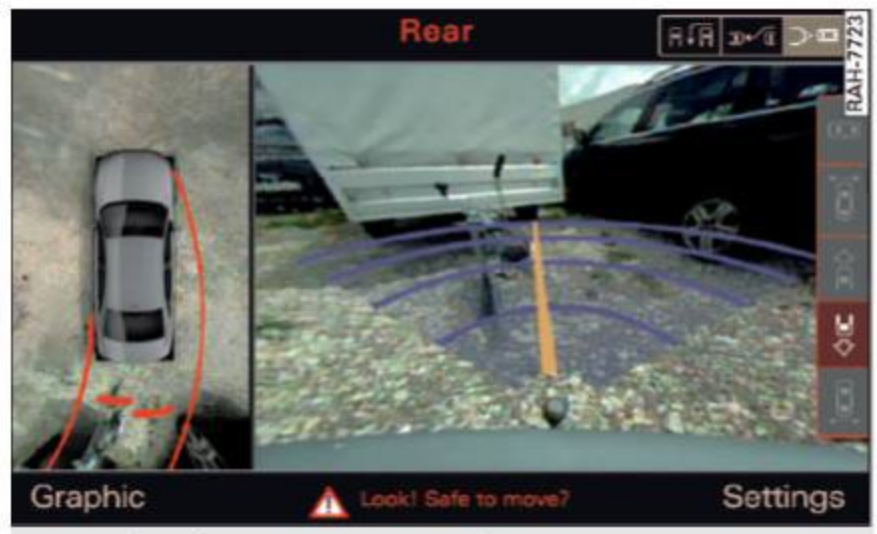


Fig. 143 Infotainment: rear mode

Requirement: Trailer mode is selected ⇨ *page 121*.

- ▸ Now you can position your vehicle in front of the trailer ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 119*. The orange colored orientation line denotes the expected path toward the trailer hitch. Use the blue lines to help you estimate the distance to the trailer hitch.

Setting the mode

Applies to vehicles: with peripheral cameras

- ▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assist** > **Parking aid** > **Change to front/rear** > **Auto** or **Manual**.

Auto - This view behind the vehicle (**Rear** mode) is displayed automatically when you shift into reverse. This view in front of the vehicle (**Front** mode) is displayed automatically when you shift into the forward gears.

Manual - When you switch the system on, the view behind the vehicle (**Rear** mode) is always displayed and it does not switch to the **Front** mode when a forward gear is selected.

Adjusting the display and the warning tones

Applies to vehicles: With parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral cameras

The display and warning tones can be adjusted in the Infotainment.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Parking aid**.

Display

On* - An optical display is shown for the parking system plus, a rearview camera image is shown for the rearview camera*.

Off - When the parking system is switched off, only audible signals are given.

Warning tones

Front volume - Volume for the front area

Rear volume - Volume for the rear area

Front frequency - Frequency for the front area

Rear frequency - Frequency for the rear area

Entertainment volume lowering - When the parking system is turned on, the volume of the audio/video source is lowered.

The newly adjusted value is briefly heard from the signal generator.

Tips

– The warning tones can also be adjusted directly by the visual display or the picture from the camera. Simply press the **Settings** control button.
– Changed settings are activated when the parking system is switched on again.
– The settings for volume and frequency are automatically saved and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Error messages

Applies to vehicles: With parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral cameras

There is an error in the system if the LED in the P button is blinking and you hear a continuous alarm for a few seconds after switching on the parking system or when the parking system is already activated. If the error is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, the LED in the P button will blink the next time you switch on the parking system by shifting into reverse.

Parking system plus

If a sensor is faulty, the P symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas Ⓐ and Ⓑ are shown ⇨ *page 115, fig. 121*. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas Ⓒ and Ⓓ are shown. There is also a system malfunction if all segments around the vehicle are red or if no segments are displayed.

Peripheral cameras*

There is a system malfunction if the symbol appears and the corresponding display area is shown in blue. The camera is not working in this area.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Trailer hitch

Applies to vehicles: with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral cameras and trailer hitch

For vehicles using the trailer socket, the parking system rear sensors do not turn on when you shift into reverse gear or when you press the P button. This results in the following restrictions.

Parking system plus

There is no distance warning for the rear. The front sensors remain activated. The visual display switches to the trailer towing mode.

Rearview camera*/peripheral cameras*

There is no distance warning for the rear. The front sensors remain activated. The visual display switches to the trailer towing mode. The rearview camera image will not show the orientation lines and the blue surfaces. ▶

Tips

Trailer hitches that are not installed at the factory may cause the parking system to malfunction or they may restrict its function.

Driving safety

Basics

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
- Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
- Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

The following is a list of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts for driver and all passenger seating positions,
- safety belt pretensioners,
- safety belt force limiters for the front seats,
- safety belt height adjustment systems for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- knee airbags for the front seats*
- side airbags in the front seats and outer rear seats*,
- side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features,
- special LATCH anchorages for child restraints,
- head restraints for each seating position,
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

Safety is everybody's responsibility!

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 63*, ⇨ *page 60*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height. ▶

- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 167, Child safety*.
- ▸ Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 52, General information*.
- ▸ Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 135*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- ▸ Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- ▸ NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- ▸ Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- ▸ ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- ▸ Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- ▸ Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Correct passenger seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

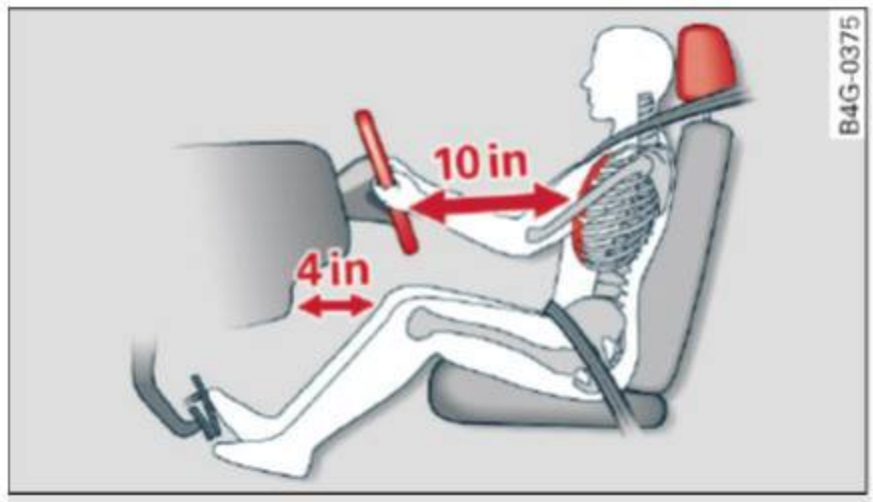


Fig. 144 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- ▸ Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- ▸ Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 144*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealership about adaptive equipment.
- ▸ Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- ▸ Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- ▸ For adjustable head restraints: Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- ▸ Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 138*.

▸ Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 53*.

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
– Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Before driving, always adjust the front seats properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
– For adjustable head restraints: before driving, always also adjust the head restraints properly.
– Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 167*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 143*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

▸ Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
▸ For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 129*. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
▸ Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
▸ Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 138*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 52*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.

▸

– Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
– Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
– Always make sure that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the front passenger's knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat properly.
– For adjustable head restraints: before driving, always also adjust the head restraints properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 167*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 143*.

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

- For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 129*.
- Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 138*.
- Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 167*.

WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the safety belts are properly positioned on the body and securely latched. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!
– For adjustable head restraints: always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection.

Proper adjustment of head restraints

Applies to vehicles: with adjustable head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

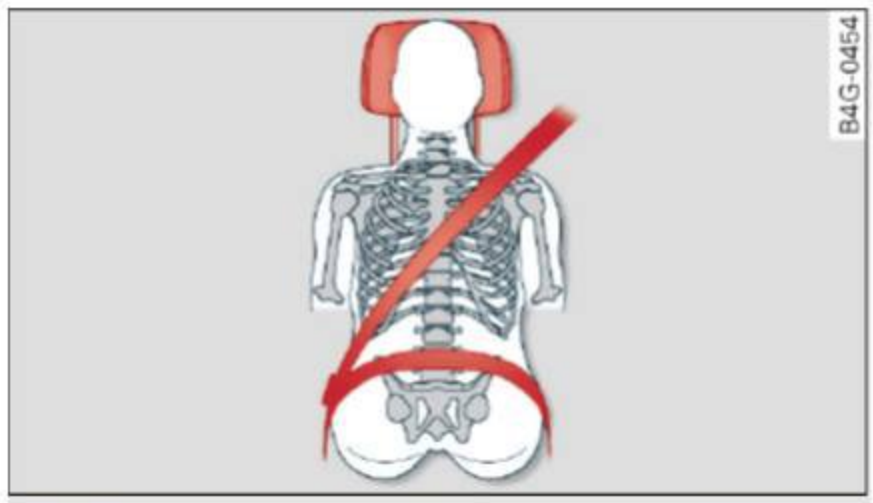


Fig. 145 Head restraint: viewed from the front

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

- ▸ Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *fig. 145*. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- ▸ If there is a passenger on the rear center seating position*, slide the center head restraint* upward at least to the next notch.

Adjusting head restraints ⇨ *page 55*.

WARNING

All seats are equipped with head restraints. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically. To help reduce the risk of injury:

- – Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.
- – Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.
- – Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- – Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.
- – Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇨ *page 167*.

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- ▸ Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- – never stand up in the vehicle
- – never stand on the seats
- – never kneel on the seats
- – never ride with the seatback reclined
- – never lie down on the rear seat
- – never lean up against the instrument panel
- – never sit on the edge of the seat
- – never sit sideways
- – never lean out the window
- – never put your feet out the window
- – never put your feet on the instrument panel
- – never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
- – never ride in the footwell
- – never ride in the cargo area ▸

WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Driver's and front passenger's footwell

Important safety instructions

Applies to vehicles: with knee airbags

WARNING

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.

– No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
– No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

▸ Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi Dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

▶

– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
– Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
– Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Storing cargo correctly

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

- ▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ▸ Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.
- ▸ Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇨ *page 63, Luggage compartment*.
- ▸ Make sure that the rear seatback is securely latched in place.

WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:
– Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
– Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.

WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:
– Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  – Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  – Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
– Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.
– Please observe information on safe driving ⇨ *page 126*.

WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.
– Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  – Close all windows,
  – Close the power roof*,
  – Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  – Switch off the air recirculation,
  – Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, all windows, the power roof* and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.
– After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked. ▶

– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
– Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Tips

– Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.
– The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 244*.

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇨ *page 132, Loading the luggage compartment*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.
– Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
– When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.
– Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and ▶

remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact the NHTSA, you may either call:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or 1-800-424-9393

or you may write to:

NHTSA
U.S. Department of Transportation
1200 New Jersey Ave., S.E.
West Building
Washington, DC 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired: Tel.: 1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Safety belts

General information

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

▸ Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.

Number of seats

Your Audi has a total of four seating positions: two in the front and two in the rear. In some vehicles, there are five seating positions: two in the front and three in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger (on USA models only) to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.



Fig. 146 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

▸ Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.
▸ Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
▸ Protect children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

WARNING

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.

▸

– Failure to pay attention to the warning light that come on, could lead to personal injury.

Why use safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

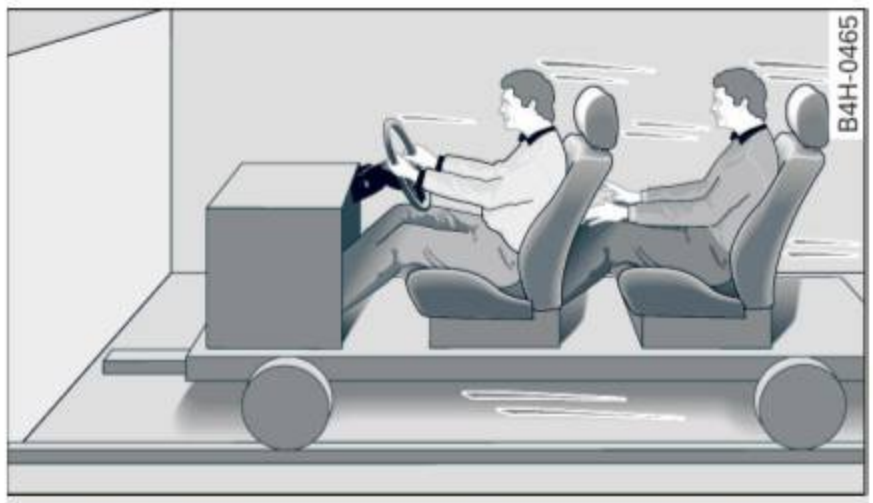


Fig. 147 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall



Fig. 148 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 147*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 148*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs, or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!



Fig. 149 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 150 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, ▶

instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 149*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 150*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 151 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or “softly” through the “give” in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By “absorbing” the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more “tolerable” and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- ▸ Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- ▸ Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged. ▶

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never wear belts twisted.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *table on page 207*.

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Safety first - everybody buckle up!



Fig. 152 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇨ *page 52, General information*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *fig. 152*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle. ▶

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated ⇨ *page 141*. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 18*.

Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 177*.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 139, Safety belt position*.

- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.
- Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
- Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 179*.

Tips

For information on safety belt pretensioners, refer to ⇨ *page 141*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

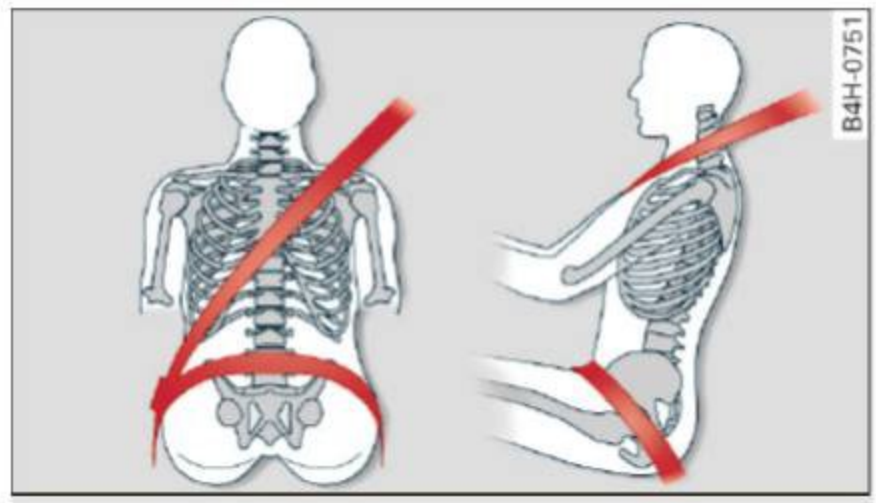


Fig. 153 Safety belt position

Use the height adjustment to change the position of the shoulder belt of the front safety belts.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit snugly ⇨ *fig. 153*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 137*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 154 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 139*.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and adjustable head restraint* correctly ⇨ *page 52, General information*.
- ▸ Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 154*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇨ *page 138, fig. 152*.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.

– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 139*.

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

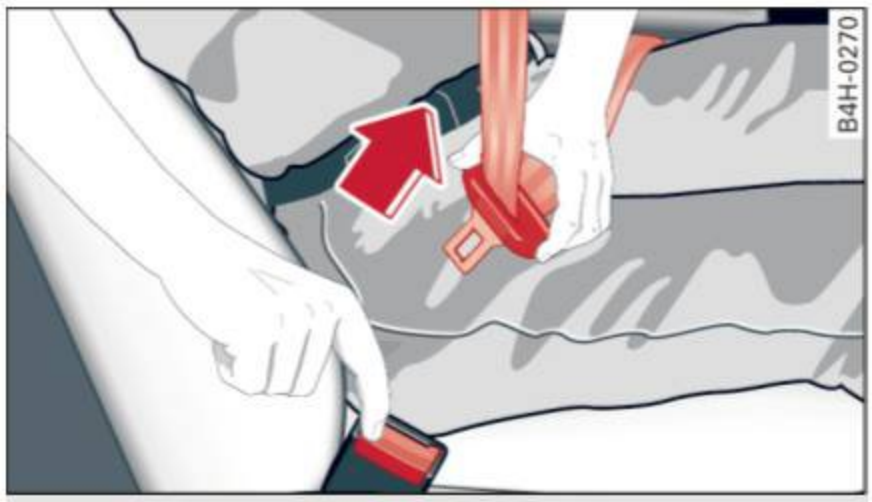


Fig. 155 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- ▸ Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 155*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Adjusting safety belt height

With the aid of the safety belt height adjustment, the three point safety belt strap routing can be fitted to the shoulder area, according to body size.

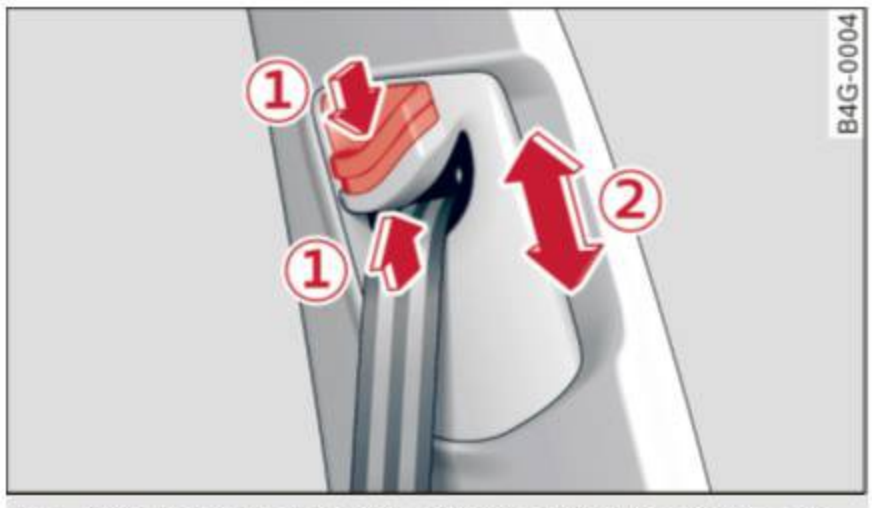


Fig. 156 Safety belt height adjustment for the front seats – loop-around fittings

The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety belt position on page 139*. ▸

- ▸ *Push* the loop-around fittings **up** ⇨ *fig. 156* ②, or
- ▸ *squeeze* together the ① button, and *push* the loop-around fittings **down** ②.
- ▸ Pull the belt to make sure that the upper attachment is properly engaged.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 137*.

Tips

With the front seats, the height adjustment of the seat can also be used to adjust the position of the safety belts.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- ▸ Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- – Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
- – Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 137*.

Belt tensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

In front, side and rear-end collisions above a particular severity and in a rollover, safety belts are tensioned automatically.

Reversible safety belt tensioners

The safety belts on the front seats are equipped with power reversible tensioners. The following functions are available when the driver's/front passenger's safety belts are fastened:

- – Automatic tensioners: at the start of a drive, the safety belts automatically adjust to the passenger after a certain time period or vehicle speed. To switch the automatic tensioners off, select the following in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Driver's seat** or **Passenger's seat** > **Automatic belt tensioner** > **Off**.
- – In certain driving situations, the safety belts may tighten with a reversible tensioning function ⇨ *page 185*.
- – The safety belts may also tighten with this reversible tensioning function in minor collisions.

Pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with safety belt pretensioners. The system is activated by sensors in front, side and rear-end collisions of great severity and in a rollover. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack ⇨ ⚠ *in Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner on page 142*. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

WARNING

- – It is possible for the pretensioners to deploy incorrectly.
- – The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection for one collision. If the pyrotechnic pretensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced.

Tips

The pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners can only deploy once. ▶

– The safety belt pretensioners do not deploy in minor frontal and side collisions, in rear-end collisions, in rollovers and in collisions involving very little impact force.
– A fine dust is released when the pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners deploy. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.
– Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Audi dealer perform this service for you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:
– The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Airbag system

Important information

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 127*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 53*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 137*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 167*.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 127, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 53*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 167*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside of the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

Since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will ▶

also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in rollovers.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 135*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 138, Safety belts*.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 127*.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▸ Be sure to read the important information and heed the WARNINGS for important details ▶

about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 167*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Standard requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off ("suppressed") if a child up to about one year of age restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified has been installed on the front passenger seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 169*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you switch on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 169*.
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system ⇨ *page 154, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 169*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that ▶

take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 155, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*.

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 167, Child safety*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 154, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
- Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.

▶

- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 157 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel

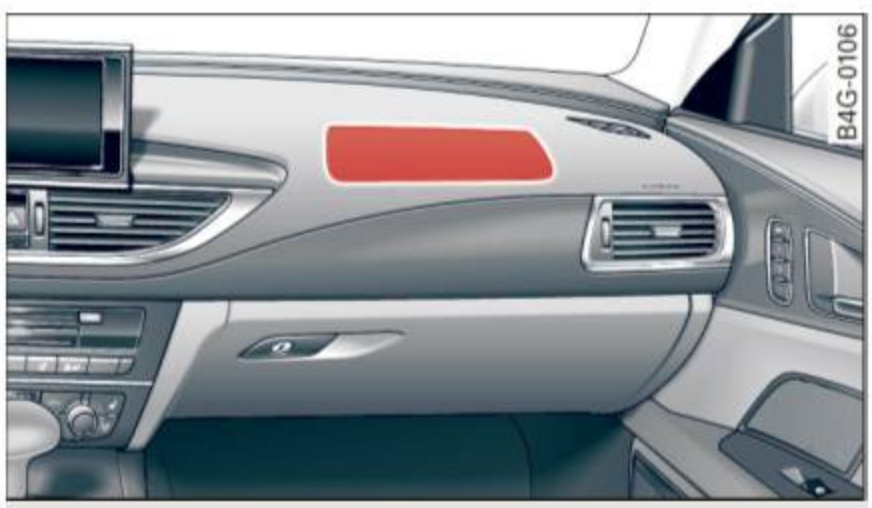


Fig. 158 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The safety belts for the seats have “pretensioners” that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 157* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 158*. The general location of the airbags is marked “AIRBAG”.

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
- Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9:00 o'clock and 3:00 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Always make sure nothing is in the front airbag deployment zone that could be struck by the airbag when it inflates.
- Objects in the zone of a deploying airbag can become projectiles when the airbag deploys and cause serious personal injury.
- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors; never attach then to the doors or the windshield; never place them over or near or attach them to the area marked „AIRBAG“ on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the seat backrests; never place them between these areas and you or any other person in the vehicle.
- Never attach objects to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as accessory GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially when the airbags inflate.
- Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during breaking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.

- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the „low risk“ option for 3- and 6-year-old children under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child with electrical capacitance greater than the combined capacitance of a typical one-year old infant restrained in one of the forward facing or rearward-facing child seats with which your vehicle was certified is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you ▶

and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low risk" requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 169, Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system*.

"Suppression" requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 169*,
– When a person is detected on the front passenger seat that has an electrical capacitance that is more than the total electrical capacitance of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total electrical capacitance on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 169*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 154*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 143*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the capacitive passenger detection system, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system on the front passenger seat when the ignition is switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected ⇨ *page 155*. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

- Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
- An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit “decides” whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also “decides” whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated. ▶

– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A capacitive passenger detection system underneath the front passenger seat cover. This system measures the electrical capacitance of the person in the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 154*.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *page 155, fig. 160* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.
– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
– Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
– Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
– Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
– Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. The capacitive passenger detection mat in the front passenger seat will not function properly if it is punctured.
– Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Such objects can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
– Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
– Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the capacitive passenger detection system from accurately measuring the capacitance of the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus keep the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket. Such devices can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint ▶

manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If the front passenger seat gets wet, dry it immediately.

– If liquid soaks into the front passenger seat, this can keep the airbag system from working properly and may, for instance, deactivate the passenger frontal airbag. If this happens, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on together with the airbag indicator light AIR BAG in the instrument cluster.

– If liquid is pooled on the seat, but has not soaked in, this may also keep the airbag system from working properly and cause the passenger frontal airbag to be enabled (turned on), even though there is a properly installed child restraint system on the seat. Wet towels or other wet things on the seat cushion can have the same effect. If the front passenger frontal airbag is turned on, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light light will go out.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters and the adjustable head restraints* to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger frontal airbag will be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front passenger frontal airbag will also be turned off if the capacitance measured by the system for the front passenger seat equals that of an infant of about one year of age in one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 155*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.

– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 143*.

More important things to know about front airbags



Fig. 159 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag,
– and for adjustable head restraints: the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags supplement the three-point safety belts only in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag also will not deploy:

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat indicates that the passenger side frontal airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light ⇨ *page 155* and how they work comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.
– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 144*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

▶

162.561.4GA.23

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuvers and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.
– Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Objects on the front passenger seat could cause the capacitive sensor in the seat to signal to airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact is not, or that the person on the seat is heavier than he or she actually is. The change in electric capacitance because of such objects can cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.

– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

AIR BAG Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags and side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light AIR BAG will come on for a few seconds (function check). ▶

The system must be inspected when the indicator light AIR BAG:

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will first start flashing to catch the driver's attention and then stay on continuously to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 18* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light



Fig. 160 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 160*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. If the bulb for the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light burns out, the airbag indicator light AIR BAG will come on to signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out bulb will not change the way the front passenger's frontal airbag works, it will no longer be possible to use the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will blink for about 5 seconds when:

– the ignition is switched on and
– the capacitive passenger detection system, which switches the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

As soon as the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is proper for the age, size and electrical capacitance of the person occupying the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will show the status of the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag a few seconds after the ignition is switched on and the airbag indicator light goes off. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied;
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified; For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's ▶

compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 169*.

– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...
– a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
– and if the electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 144, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 167, Child safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light comes on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear on and does not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight.
– make sure that no electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) is placed or used on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket;
– make sure that no seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat;
– make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;
– make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light still does not come on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

– take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
– move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG light should NOT come on ...

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

– the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with ▶

his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined,
– the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
– the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
– there are no aftermarket seat covers or cushions or other things (such as blankets) on the front passenger seat that might cause the capacitive passenger detection system to miscalculate electrical capacitance.

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

– If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 18* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or in a rearward-facing child safety seat, or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.
– Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
– Always install forward or rear-facing child seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat. ▶

Tips

If the capacitive passenger detection system determines that the front passenger seat is empty, the frontal airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- The airbag system can deploy only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.
- For safety reasons in severe accidents, the alternator and starter are separated from the vehicle battery with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.
  - Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified technicians who have the experience, information and special tools necessary to perform the work safely.
  - If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed. ▶

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
- Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

Knee airbags

Description of knee airbags

Applies to vehicles: with knee airbags

The knee airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

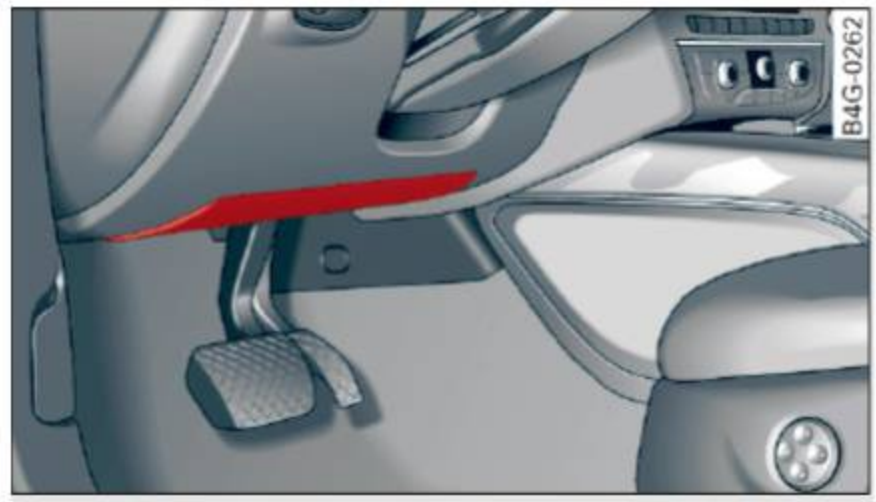


Fig. 161 Driver's knee airbag

The driver knee airbag is in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 161*, the airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment.

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas and supplements the protection provided by the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met ⇨ *page 152, More important things to know about front airbags*.

In addition to their normal safety function, safety belts help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide supplemental protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 135, General information*. ▶

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental knee airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising and minor abrasions and friction burns can also occur when an airbag inflates.

The knee airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module
– Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The knee airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in frontal collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
– in side collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers
– in the event of a system malfunction (warning/indicator light is on) ⇨ *page 18*.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 152*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 18* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How knee airbags work

Applies to vehicles: with knee airbags

The risk of injury to the leg area can be reduced by fully inflated knee airbags.



Fig. 162 Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger deploy in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met.

When the system deploys, the airbags fill with a propellant gas, and inflate between the lower part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇨ *page 152, fig. 159*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury.

Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Applies to vehicles: with knee airbags

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- The knee airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:
  - at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.
  - at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.
- Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
  - Never let anybody, especially children or animals ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
  - Never carry objects of any kind in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can interfere with or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.
- Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.
- If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in a collision ⇨ *page 167, Child safety*.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.



Fig. 163 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 163* and the rear backrest facing the doors. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly. The side airbag for the front passenger seat can be used with properly installed child restraints. Please be sure to read the important information and warnings whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle: Safety belts ⇨ *page 135*, Airbag system ⇨ *page 143*, Child safety ⇨ *page 167*.

The side airbag system basically consists of: ▶

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two airbags located in the sides of the front backrests and the two airbags* located in the rear backrest
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's, front and rear passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 163, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 135, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 163*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 18* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

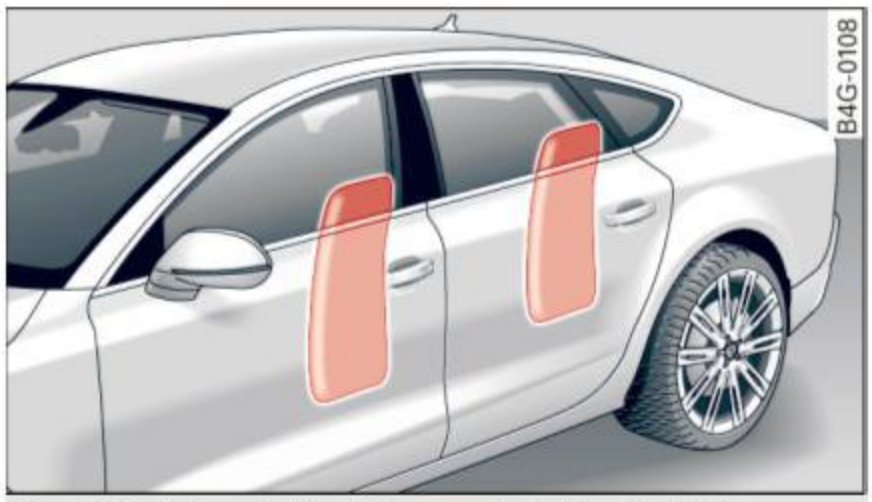


Fig. 164 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle, rear side airbag

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked “AIRBAG”. It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 167, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 164*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  - Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  - Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or ▶

by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the seat backrests.
– Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
– Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.

– Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
– Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
– The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.
– Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 167, Child safety*.
– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
  – Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
  – Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
  – Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
  – Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
  – Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Side curtain airbags

Description of side curtain airbags

The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

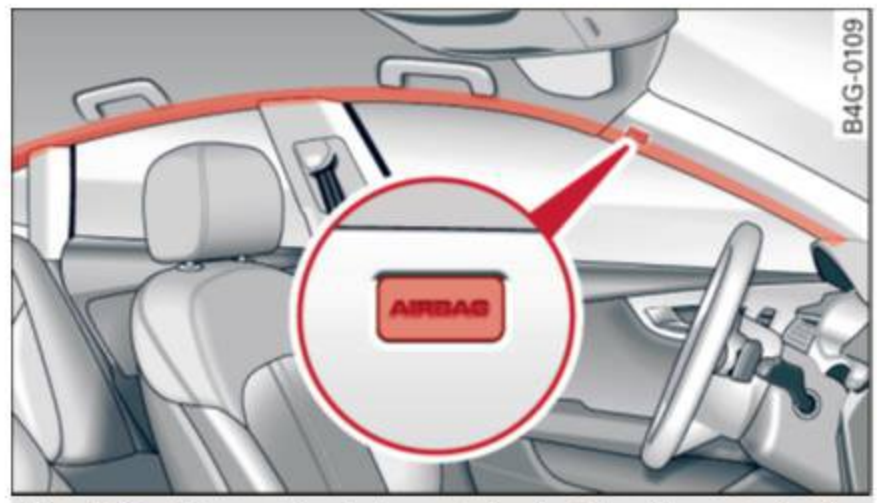


Fig. 165 Side curtain airbags, driver's side: side curtain airbag location

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 165*. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG” on the windshield frame and the center roof pillar.

The side curtain airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers.

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is ▶

below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side curtain airbag will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 165, How side curtain airbags work*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 135, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags upon deployment. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows with ejection mitigation features
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side curtain airbag is not activated:

– if the ignition is switched off,
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
– in rear-end collisions.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 52, General information*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 18* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How side curtain airbags work

Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

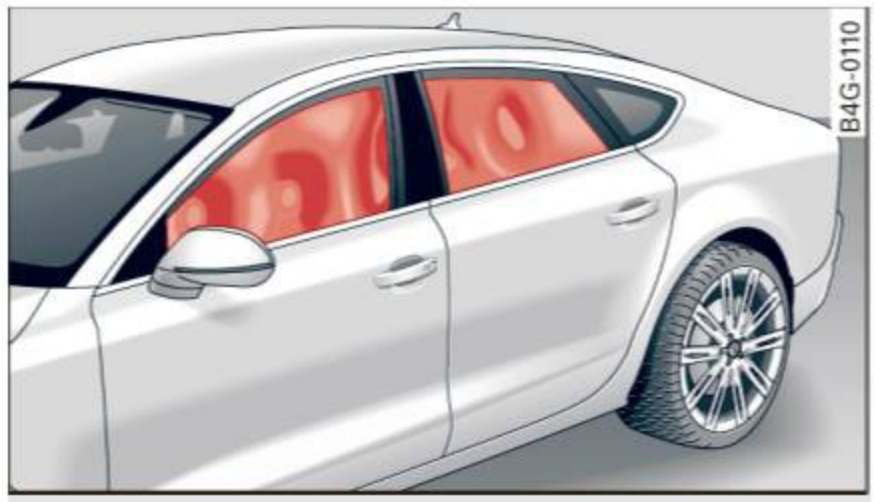


Fig. 166 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 166*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order ▶

to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 167*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbag inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Audi sun shades.
- Never swing the sun visors over to the side windows if things such as pens, garage door openers, hands-free speakers, etc. are attached to the sun visors. They could come loose and cause serious injury if the side curtain airbag inflates.
- A deploying airbag inflates in a fraction of a second and with great force.
- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a side curtain airbag.
- The airbag deployment zones must be kept clear at all times. Make sure there are no objects, pets, or other persons in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors.

WARNING

- The airbag system can deploy only once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

Child safety

Important information

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 136, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 170, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in ▶

exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  - Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  - Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
  - If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
  - Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
  - Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle ⇨ *page 135, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 143, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 167, Important information*.

Tips

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low-risk" requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The vehicle's Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat cushion that can detect the presence of a baby or a child in a child restraint system on this seat.

The capacitive passenger detection system registers the changes that result in an electrical field when a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket are on the front passenger seat. The change in the measured capacitance due to the presence of a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket on the front passenger seat is related to the child restraint system resting on the seat. The measured capacitance of a child restraint system varies depending on the type of system and specific make and model.

The electrical capacitance of the various types, makes, and models of child restraints specified by the U.S.National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in the relevant safety standard are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control unit together with the capacitances typical of infants and a 1-year old child. When a child restraint is used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system with the data stored in the electronic control unit.

Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child and child restraint are correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off, and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different "footprints", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with ▶

162.561.4GA.23

each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.

– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 173*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat. ▶

- ▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 177*.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 172*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- – All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- – Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  - – When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  - – Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  - – Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
- – Never allow children under 57 inches (1.45 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
- – Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
- – Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  - – Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  - – The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.
  - – The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
- – Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- – The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- – Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- – Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- – If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken: ▸

– Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
– Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 135, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 143, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 167, Child safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat



Fig. 167 Schematic overview: keep unused safety belts away from children in child safety seats. Ⓐ - outer rear safety belt, Ⓑ - center rear safety belt*

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench, especially with LATCH universal lower anchorages, the unused safety belts **must** be secured so that the child in the child restraint cannot reach them ⇨ ⚠.

– Guide the safety belt webbings Ⓐ and Ⓑ* behind the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed ⇨ *fig. 167*. When doing so, do not engage the convertible locking retractor! You should not hear a “clicking” sound when winding up the safety belt.
– Let the belt retractor wind up the safety belt webbing. ▶

WARNING

A child in a child safety seat installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt or a child in a booster seat on the rear seat could play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled. This could cause the child serious personal injury and even death.

– Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed.
– Never activate the convertible locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.
– Never let anyone sit at the center rear seating position if the center rear safety belt has been routed around a rear head restraint.

Child seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs. or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.

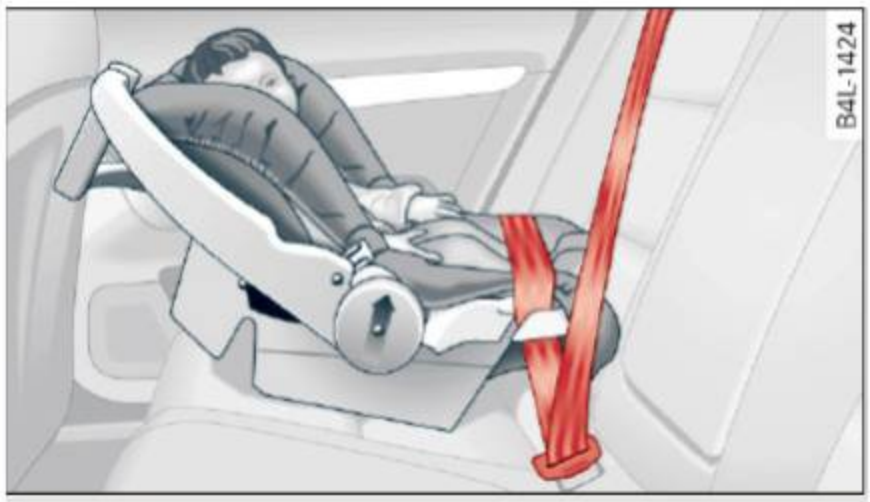


Fig. 168 Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 177* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 172*.

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs. or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 168*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 144, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install ▶

the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 135, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 143, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 167, Important information*.

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

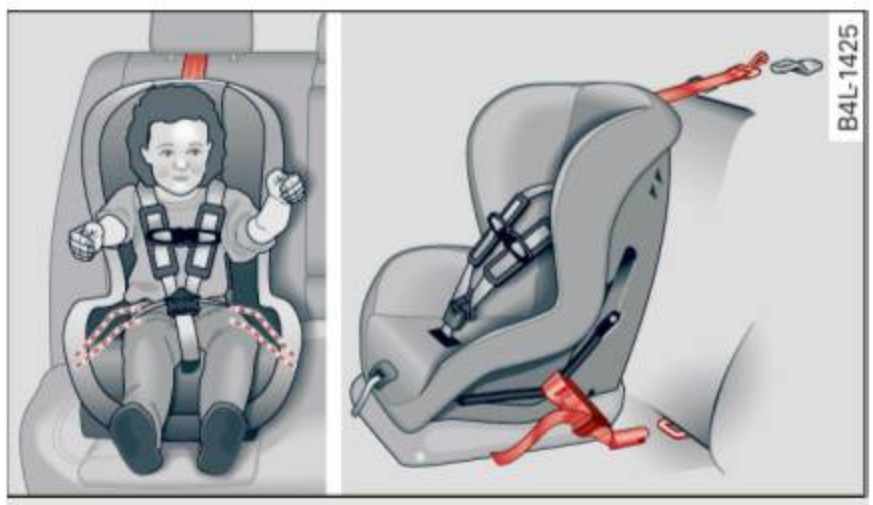


Fig. 169 Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat

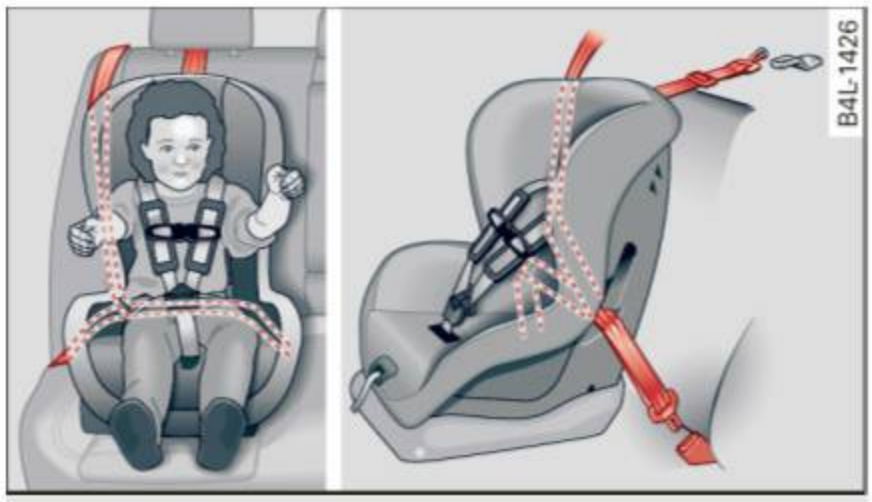


Fig. 170 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 177* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 177*.
- If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇨ *page 183*.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 172*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs. (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 169* and ⇨ *fig. 170*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious ▶

personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

– Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
– For adjustable head restraints: adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 56*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 135, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 143, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 167, Important information*.

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

– Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
– Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
– Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat at a seating position on the rear seat and have the ▶

airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall.



Fig. 171 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- ▸ Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- ▸ The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- ▸ If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 172*.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury. ▸

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure that the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 135*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- For adjustable head restraints: adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 56*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 154, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 135, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 143, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 167, Important information*.

Securing child seats

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all ▶

children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint.
- If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
- It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 167*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 144, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

- Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 154, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
- After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light signals the correct front passenger frontal airbag status.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints: ▶

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:
– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

▸ Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
▸ Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
▸ Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
▸ Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
▸ Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
▸ You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
▸ Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
▸ Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.
– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash. ▶

– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 167*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 144, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

▸ Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
▸ Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.
– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 167*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 144, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

LATCH system (Lower anchorages and tethers for children)

Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

The combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the **LATCH** system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren."

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place. ▸

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
- Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

Tips

- In Canada, the terms “top tether” with “lower universal anchorages” (or “lower universal anchorage bars”) are used to describe the system.
- In other countries, the term “ISOFIX” is used to describe the lower anchorages.

Location

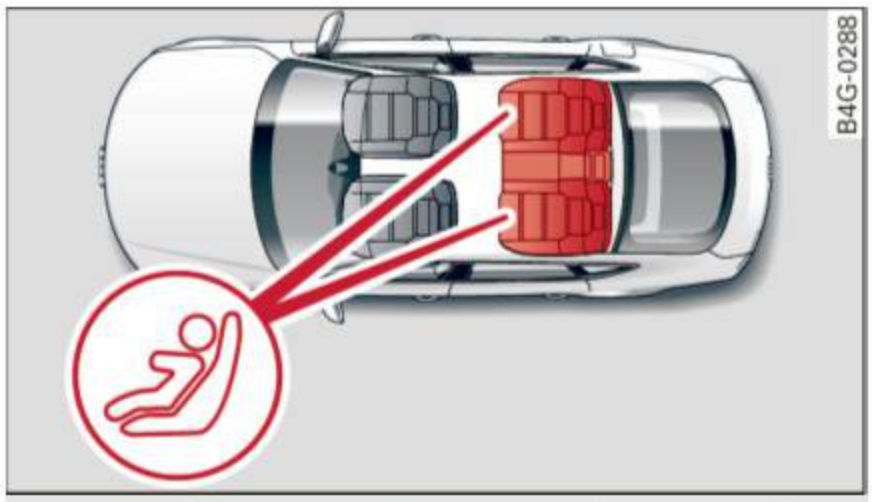


Fig. 172 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower anchorages system.

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.

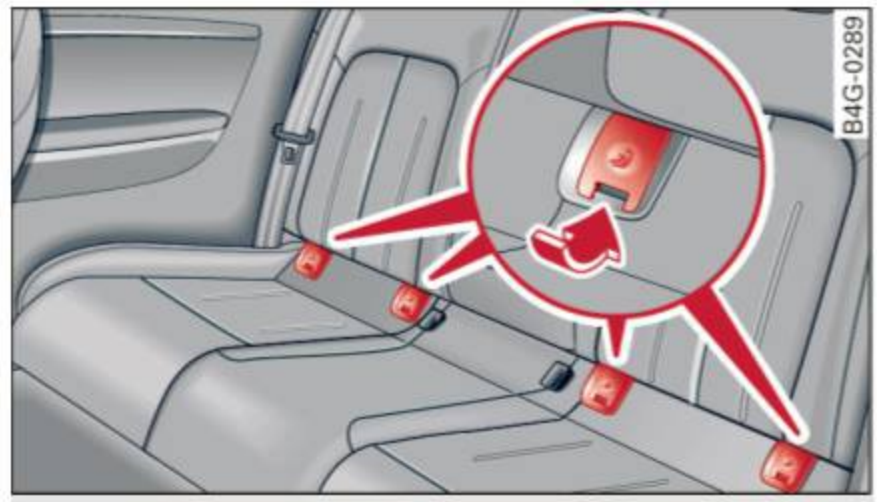


Fig. 173 Lower anchorages, covers marked

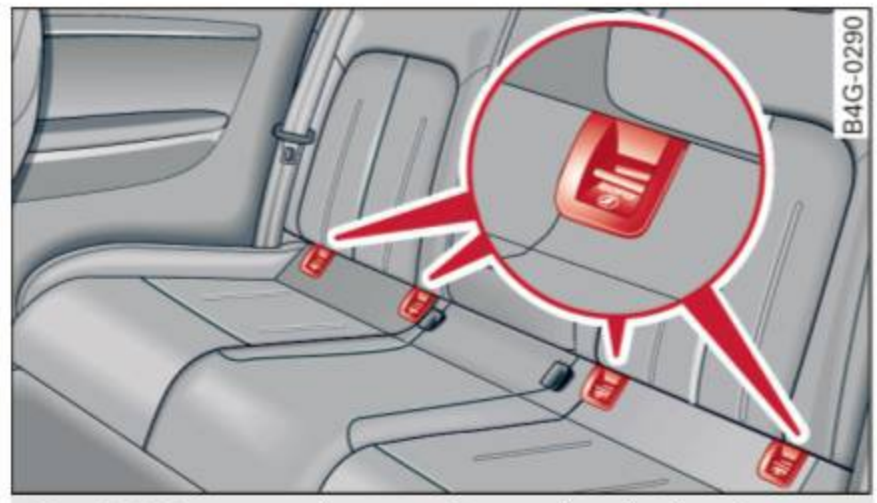


Fig. 174 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Lower anchorages

The circular markings on the rear seat help you to identify the location of lower anchorages for the two outboard seating positions ⇨ *fig. 173*. The LATCH lower universal anchorage attachment points are between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion.

Remove the covers ⇨ *fig. 173* to access the lower anchorage attachment points.

The lower anchorage attachment points are visible ⇨ *fig. 174*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system. ▶

Please remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

WARNING

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
– Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 167, Child safety*.

Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

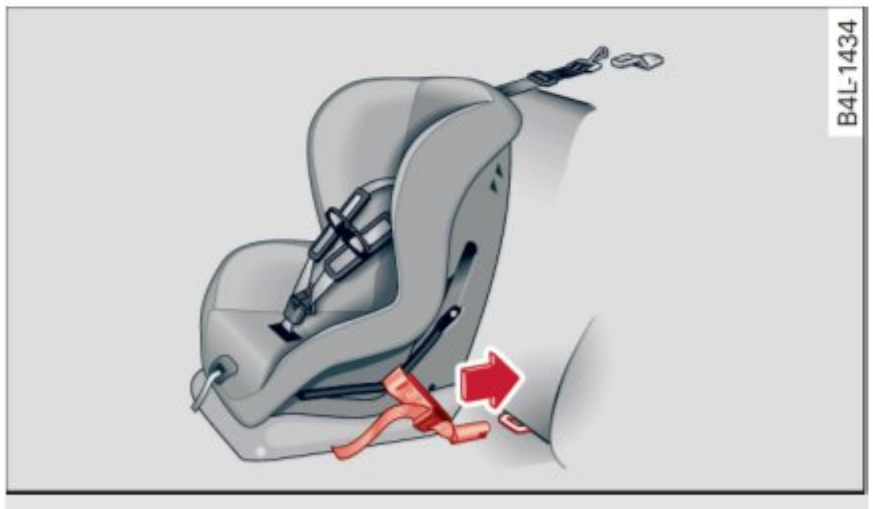


Fig. 175 Lower anchorages: proper mounting

Mounting

- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- ▸ Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 175*.
- ▸ Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- ▸ Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

- ▸ Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 167, Child safety*.

Tether anchors and tether straps

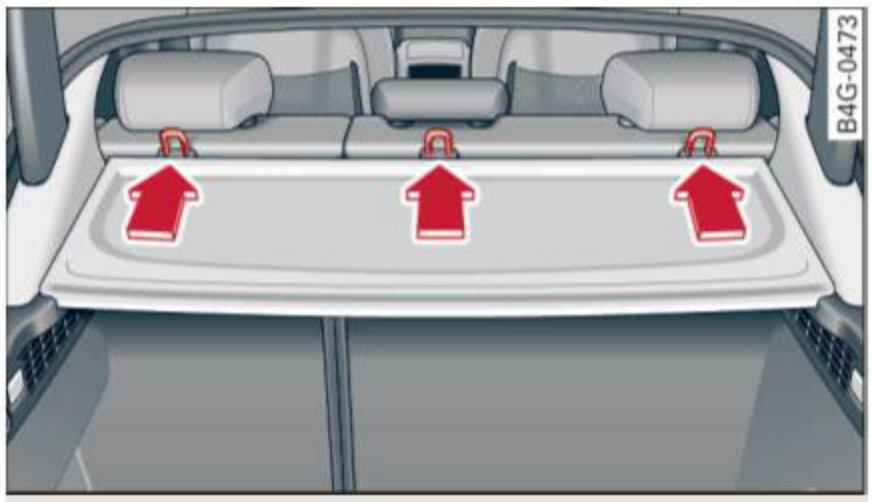


Fig. 176 Tether anchors: attachment hook locations behind the rear seatbacks

The tether anchors for the two/three* rear seating positions are located on the backside of the rear seatbacks ⇨ *fig. 176*. Vehicles with two rear seating positions are equipped with two tether anchors.

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
- Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.
- Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
- Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage

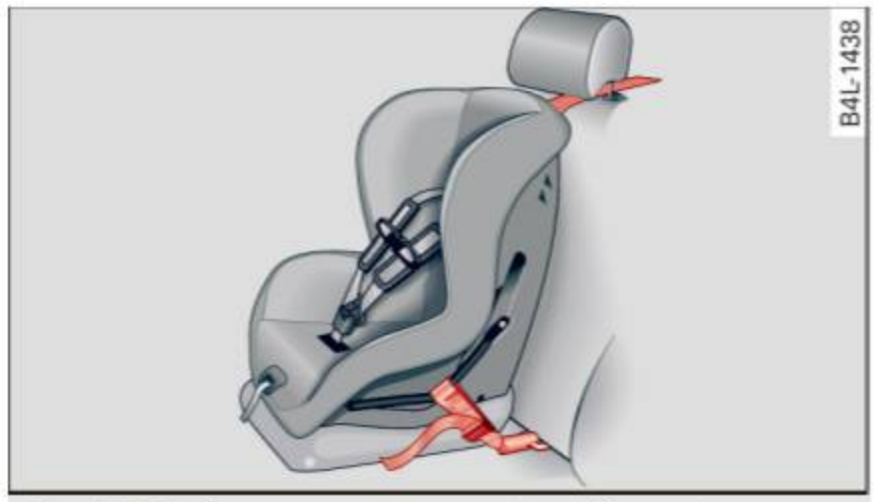


Fig. 177 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting

Installing the tether strap

- ▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint ⇨ *fig. 177* (raise the head restraint if necessary).
- ▸ Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the tether anchorage.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. ▶

Releasing the tether strap

- ▸ Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Additional information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
www.nhtsa.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or call 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi Customer Relations
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

Audi pre sense

Preventative passenger protection

Applies to vehicles: with Audi pre sense

Pre sense can initiate steps to protect vehicle occupants in certain dangerous situations. The functions described are available depending on vehicle equipment:

Pre sense basic*

The following functions can be triggered in certain driving situations:

– Tensioning of the safety belts (for example, during heavy braking): The front safety belts have reversible belt pretensioners. If a collision does not occur, the safety belts loosen slightly and are ready to trigger again.
– Closing the windows and the sunroof* (for example, when over- or understeering): The door windows and the sunroof* are closed almost completely until only a small gap is open.

Audi pre sense basic functions can be triggered at speeds above 20 mph (30 km/h).

Drive select: The deployment time is adapted in **Dynamic** mode.

Pre sense front (vehicles with adaptive cruise control*)

Pre sense front contains the functions of pre sense basic. In addition, the likelihood of a rear-end collision with the vehicle ahead is also calculated, within the limits of the system. If the risk of a collision is detected, the following functions can trigger:

– Braking guard ⇨ *page 91*
– Tensioning of the safety belts
– Closing the windows and the sunroof*

Pre sense rear (vehicles with side assist*)

Pre sense rear contains the functions of pre sense basic. In addition, the likelihood of a rear-end collision from the vehicle behind is also calculated, within the limits of the system. If the risk of a collision is detected, the following functions can trigger:

– Tensioning of the safety belts
– Closing the windows and the sunroof*

Pre sense plus*

Pre sense plus contains the functions of pre sense front and pre sense rear.

Error message

Audi pre sense: Unavailable

Preventative passenger protection is not available. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Pre sense cannot overcome natural physical laws. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– The system can deploy incorrectly.
– Please note that the sensors do not always detect all objects. This increases the risk of a collision.
– Pre sense does not react to people or animals or objects that are crossing the vehicle's path or are difficult to detect ⇨ *page 85*.
– Reflective objects such as guard rails or the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain and ice can affect the function of the radar sensors and the system's ability to detect a collision risk.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. Pre sense can be impaired by this. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– Certain pre sense front functions switch off when sport mode is switched off or when driving in reverse.
– The pre sense functions may not be available if there is a malfunction in the ESC system or the airbag control module. ▶

162.561.4GA.23

– The pre sense front/plus functions are not available if there is a malfunction in the adaptive cruise control* system ⇨ *page 92*.
– The pre sense rear/plus functions are not available if there is a malfunction in the side assist* system ⇨ *page 92*.

Intelligent Technology

Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDRs installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Audi will not access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others -

- unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees; or
- upon the official request by the police; or
- upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or
- for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.
- Audi may also use the data for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for research purposes without identifying the specific vehicle or information about the identity of its owner or lessee and only after the recorded vehicle data has been accessed.

Vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle.

Tips

Your vehicle may be equipped with Audi connect. Your use of certain Audi connect features requires wireless services that are provided by a third party wireless telecommunications provider. For details regarding how information obtained through Audi connect is collected, processed, transmitted, used, and ▶

shared, please see your contract with the wireless telecommunications provider and the "About Audi connect" tab in your vehicle's MMI: MENU button > **Audi connect** > **About Audi connect**.

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

Description

ESC helps to improve road holding and vehicle dynamics to help reduce the probability of skidding and loss of vehicle control. It works only when the engine is running. ESC detects certain difficult driving situations, including when the vehicle is beginning to spin (yaw) out of control and helps you to get the vehicle back under control by selectively braking the wheels, and/or reducing engine power and providing steering assistance to help hold the vehicle on the driver's intended course. The indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks when ESC is taking action to help you control the vehicle.

ESC has limitations. It is important to remember that ESC cannot overcome the laws of physics. It will not always be able to help out under all conditions you may come up against. For example, ESC may not always be able to help you master situations where there is a sudden change in the coefficient of friction of the road surface. When there is a section of dry road that is suddenly covered with water, slush or snow, ESC cannot perform the same way it would on the dry surface. If the vehicle hydroplanes (rides on a cushion of water instead of the road surface), ESC will not be able to help you steer the vehicle because contact with the pavement has been interrupted and the vehicle cannot be braked or steered. During fast cornering, particularly on winding roads, ESC cannot always deal as effectively with difficult driving situations than at lower speeds.

Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic and weather conditions. ESC cannot override the vehicle's physical limits, increase the available traction, or keep a vehicle on the road if road departure is a result of driver inattention. Instead, ESC improves the possibility of keeping the vehicle under control and on the road during extreme maneuvers by using the driver's steering inputs to help keep the vehicle going in the intended direction. If you are traveling at a speed that causes you to run off the road before ESC can provide any assistance, you may not experience the benefits of ESC.

ESC is switched on all the time. In certain situations when you need less traction, you can switch off ASR by pressing the button ⇨ *page 189, fig. 178*. Be sure to switch ASR on again when you no longer need less traction.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over. In vehicles with adaptive cruise control*, the brake assist system is more sensitive if the distance detected to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the force to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up inclines.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

EDL applies the brakes to a wheel that starts spinning and transfers the drive power to the other driving wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still working correctly. EDL ▶

will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Steering recommendation

The ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle by changing the steering torque.

In vehicles with dynamic steering*, ESC also helps to stabilize the steering in critical situations.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. The front wheel on the inside of the curve or both wheels on the inside of the curve are braked selectively as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The “Automatic post-collision braking system” can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of other collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision above a certain vehicle speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if:

– the driver presses the accelerator pedal, or
– the braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system, or
– the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle electrical system are not functioning.

WARNING

– The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits posed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. The ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!
– Press the accelerator pedal carefully when accelerating on even, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels are equipped with identical tires. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Switching on/off

ESC turns on automatically when you start the engine.



Fig. 178 Center console: OFF button

The following examples are unusual situations where it may make sense to switch sport mode on in order to allow the wheels to spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow or on loose ground
– Driving with snow chains ▶

ESC levels

	Sport mode on	Sport mode off
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the OFF button.	Press the OFF button again.
Indicator lights	turns on.	turns off.
Driver messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): sport. Warning! Restricted stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): on**

WARNING

Only switch sport mode on when your driving abilities and the traffic situation permit, because there is a risk of sliding.

– The stabilization function is limited when sport mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces.

Tips

– Sport mode cannot be switched on if the cruise control system* or adaptive cruise control* is switched on.

– If the rear spoiler system malfunctions, sport mode may not switch on or it may switch off again automatically.

Braking

What affects braking efficiency?

New brake pads

During the first 250 miles (400 km), new brake pads do not possess their full braking effect, they have to be “broken in” first ⇨ ⚠. You can compensate for this slightly reduced braking power by pushing harder on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking loads during the break-in period.

Operating conditions and driving habits

The brakes on today’s automobiles are still subject to wear, depending largely on operating conditions and driving habits ⇨ ⚠. On vehicles that are either driven mostly in stop-and-go city traffic or are driven hard, the brake pads should be checked by your authorized Audi dealer more often than specified in the **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**. Failure to have your brake pads inspected can result in reduced brake performance.

On steep slopes, you should use the braking effect of the engine. This way, you prevent unnecessary wear on the brake system. If you must use your brakes, do not hold the brakes down continuously. Pump the brakes at intervals.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Effect of water and road salt

In certain situations, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, after overnight condensation or after washing your car, the braking effect can be reduced by moisture or ice on the brake rotors and brake pads. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

At higher speeds and with the windshield wipers turned on, the brake pads press against the brake rotors for a short amount of time. This occurs at regular intervals without the driver noticing and provides for better brake response time under wet conditions.

The effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced when the vehicle is driven on a salt-covered road and the brakes are not used. Likewise, you clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few cautious applications of the brake ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Corrosion

There may be a tendency for dirt to build up on the brake pads and corrosion to form on the discs if the car is not driven regularly or only for short trips with little use of the brakes.

If the brakes are not used frequently, or if corrosion has formed on the discs, it is advisable to clean off the pads and discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇨ ⚠.

Faults in the brake system

If you should notice a *sudden* increase in brake pedal travel, then one of the two brake circuits may have failed ⇨ ⚠.

Low brake fluid level

Malfunctions can occur in the brake system if the brake fluid level is too low. The brake fluid level is monitored electronically.

Brake booster

The brake booster works with vacuum pressure which is created only when the engine is running ⇨ ⚠.

Brake lining wear status

Brake lining wear may be checked by visual inspection of the condition of the brake pads through the openings in the wheel. If necessary, the wheel may be removed for this inspection ⇨ *page 255, Replacing wheels*.

⚠ WARNING

- New brake pads don't have the best stopping power and must be "broken-in" during the initial 250 miles (400 km). You can compensate for this by pressing the brake pedal more firmly. This also applies later when new pads are installed.
- You should perform braking maneuvers for the purpose of cleaning the brake system only if road conditions permit. Other road users must not be put at risk - you may cause an accident!
- Before descending a steep grade, reduce speed and shift transmission into a lower gear or lower driving range. Do not ride the brakes or hold the pedal down too long or too often. This could cause the brakes to get hot and diminish braking efficiency.
- Do not "ride the brakes" by resting your foot on the pedal when you do not intend to brake. This may cause the brakes to overheat, premature wear and increased stopping distance.
- Under certain climatic and operating conditions such as passing through water, driving in heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, the effectiveness of the brakes can be reduced. In winter, ice can accumulate on the brake pads, linings, discs and drums. Carefully apply brakes for a test. Brakes will dry and ice coatings will be cleaned off after a few careful brake applications.
- Driving for an extended period of time on salt-covered roads without using your brakes can also affect braking efficiency. Clean off accumulated salt coating from brake discs and pads with a few careful brake applications.
- If you damage the front spoiler, or if you install a different spoiler, be sure the air flow to the front brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system could overheat reducing the effectiveness of the entire brake system.
- Failure of one brake circuit will impair the braking capability resulting in an increased stopping distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed to the nearest Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never let the vehicle roll to a stop with the engine shut off.
- If the brake booster is not working, the brake pedal must be pressed considerably harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance.

Electromechanical steering, dynamic steering

The electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements.

Power steering adapts *electronically* based on the vehicle speed.

Indicator lights and messages

Do not drive vehicle: steering defective

If this indicator light turns on and stays on and this message appears, the power steering may have failed.

Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do **not** continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: System fault You can continue driving

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the steering may be more difficult to move or more sensitive than usual. The steering wheel may also be at an angle when driving straight.

Drive slowly to your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop to have the malfunction corrected.

Dynamic steering: Initializing

If the indicator light ls blinking and this message appears, dynamic steering* is being initialized. Once you start the engine after this is finished, the steering wheel will be easy to move. Re-initialization might be necessary if the steering wheel was moved hard to the left and right while the vehicle was not moving. The display turns off if the initialization was successful.

Tips

- If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.
- The dynamic steering stability systems ⇨ *page 188* are not available in the event of a system malfunction.
- For additional information on dynamic steering, refer to ⇨ *page 101*.

All wheel drive (quattro)

Applies to vehicles: with all wheel drive

In all wheel drive, all four wheels are powered.

General information

In all wheel drive, the driving power is divided between all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving behavior as well as the current road conditions. Refer to ⇨ *page 188, Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)*.

A center differential distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axle. It works together with selective wheel torque control, which activates when driving through curves ⇨ *page 189*. With the sport differential*, power distribution to the rear wheels is variable and can be adjusted with drive select ⇨ *page 101*.

The all wheel drive concept is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

Winter tires

By using all wheel drive, your vehicle has good forward motion with standard tires in winter conditions. However, in winter we recommend using winter or all season tires on all four wheels, because this will improve the braking effect.

Snow chains

If there are snow chain laws, snow chains must also be used on vehicles with all wheel drive ⇨ *page 248, Snow chains*.

Replacing tires

For vehicles with all wheel drive, only wheels with the same rolling circumference should be used. Avoid wheels with different tread depths ⇨ *page 240, New tires or wheels*. ▶

Offroad vehicle?

Your Audi is not an offroad vehicle - there is not enough ground clearance. For this reason, avoid difficult terrain.

WARNING

- Also, in vehicles with all wheel drive, adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not be tempted to accelerate to a high speed when the road is slippery this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine does not rev higher suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. For this reason, pay attention to the road conditions regardless of your speed to reduce the risk of an accident.

Rear spoiler

The extendable rear spoiler increases driving stability.



Fig. 179 Center console: rear spoiler button

The rear spoiler retracts and extends. Various operating modes (automatic or manual mode) can be activated.

Automatic mode (normal operation)

- Automatic deployment: At a speed of about 80 mph (130 km/h), the rear spoiler deploys automatically.
- Automatic retraction: When speed drops below about 50 mph (80 km/h), the rear spoiler retracts automatically.

Manual mode

- Manual deployment: Tapping briefly on the switch⇨ *fig. 179* deploys the rear spoiler.
- Manual retraction: At speeds up to about 10 mph (20 km/h), retract the rear spoiler by pressing and holding the switch. At speeds between 10 mph (20 km/h) and 80 mph (130 km/h), retract the rear spoiler by tapping on the switch.

Indicator lights

/ Rear spoiler: System fault

The rear spoiler may not have extended due to a malfunction. This could change the vehicle's driving characteristics at high speeds. Do not exceed 85 mph (140 km/h). Drive to your authorized Audi dealer immediately to have the malfunction corrected. The color of the indicator light depends on the vehicle speed.

WARNING

Driving at higher speeds without the rear spoiler deployed can impair handling characteristics, making the vehicle harder to control.

- Always make sure that the spoiler is deployed when driving at speeds over 85 mph (140 km/h). If the rear spoiler warning/indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on, the rear spoiler may not have deployed.
- Never drive at speeds higher than 85 mph (140 km/h) if the spoiler is not deployed. Have the spoiler inspected as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always obey speed limits and other traffic laws.

WARNING

Improper operation of the rear spoiler can cause crushing injuries.

– Always make sure that nobody, especially children, is in the way when the rear spoiler is deployed or retracted.

Note

– Never push on the vehicle on the rear spoiler. This could cause damage.
– To prevent damage to the rear spoiler do not lean or place anything on it.
– Only operate the rear spoiler manually when the luggage compartment lid is close and the rear spoiler moving parts are not blocked. Otherwise, damage could occur.

Tips

Clean the rear spoiler compartment every 2 to 3 months. To function correctly, the rear spoiler must be free of ice, snow and leaves.

Energy management

The starting ability is optimized

The energy management system manages the electrical energy distribution and optimizes the availability of electrical energy for starting the engine.

When a vehicle with a conventional energy system is not driven for a long time, the battery is drained by equipment (for example the immobilizer). In certain circumstances, there could may not be enough energy to start the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the battery life.

The energy management system Is made up of **battery diagnosis**, **idling current management** and **dynamic energy management**.

Battery diagnosis

The battery diagnosis determines the battery charge level. The sensors detect the battery, the battery current, and the battery temperature. The current charge level and the performance of the battery are determined based on this.

Idling current management

The idling current management decreases the energy used while parked. With the engine switched off, it manages the energy distribution to the different electrical components. Date from battery diagnosis is taken into account for this.

Depending on the battery charge level, electrical equipment is switched off one item after the other, to prevent the battery from draining and to retain the starting ability.

Dynamic energy management

While driving, dynamic energy management distributes the appropriate amount of energy to the electrical equipment. It controls the battery charge level so that more energy is not used then is being generated in order to maintain an optimal battery charge level.

Tips

– Energy management cannot overcome the laws of physics. Note that the charge level and length of the battery life are limited.
– When the starting ability is endangered, the indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 16*.

What you should know

Maintaining the starting ability is the highest priority.

A lot of stress is placed on the battery when driving short distances, in traffic, and at cold times of the year. A lot of energy is used but little is generated. It is also critical when the engine is not running but electrical equipment is switched on. In this case, energy is used but none is generated.

In situations like this, energy management will actively regulated the distribution of energy.

Long periods without use

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical equipment is gradually scaled ▶

back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

With the engine switched off

The battery will drain if you use functions such as listening to the radio while the engine is switched off.

The vehicle's ability to start may be impaired by the energy use, a message will appear in the Infotainment system display.

The message indicates that the system will switch off automatically soon. If you would like to continue using the functions, you must start the engine.

With the engine running

Although electrical energy is generated while driving, the battery can drain. This can happen when little energy is generated, and much is used and the charge level of the battery is not optimal.

To restore the balance of energy, components that require large amounts of energy are temporarily scaled back or switched off. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the seat heating* or rear window defroster is not working, then it has been temporarily reduced or switched off. These systems are available again as soon as the energy balance has been restored.

In addition, you may notice that the idle speed has slightly increased. That is normal and no cause for concern. Due to the increased idling speed, the additional required energy will be generated and the battery will be charged.

162.561.4GA.23

Driving and the environment

Breaking in

New engine

The engine needs to be run-in during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km).

For the first 600 miles (1,000 kilometers):

- Do not use full throttle.
- Do not drive at engine speeds that are more than 2/3 of the maximum permitted RPM.
- Avoid high engine speeds.

From 600 to 1,000 miles (1,000 to 1,500 kilometers):

- Speeds can *gradually* be increased to the maximum permissible road or engine speed.

During and after break-in period

- Do not rev the engine up to high speeds when it is cold. This applies whether the transmission is in N (Neutral) or in gear.

After the break-in period

- Do not exceed maximum engine speed under any circumstances.
- Upshift into the next higher gear *before* reaching the red area at the end of the tachometer scale ⇨ *page 10*.

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than later when all the moving parts have been broken in. How well this break-in process is done depends to a considerable extent on the way the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 kilometers).

Note

Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced. However, these rpm limits are programmed for an engine well run-in, not a new engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive with unnecessarily high engine speeds - upshifting early saves fuel, reduces noise and protects the environment.

New tires

If your vehicle is running on new tires, drive particularly careful for the first 350 miles (500 kilometers) after fitting.

WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in". Be sure to remember this during the first 350 miles (500 kilometers). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking.

Avoid damaging the vehicle

When you are driving on poor roads, or over curbs, steep ramps, etc., make certain that low-lying parts such as spoilers and exhaust system parts do not bottom out and get damaged.

This is especially true for vehicles with low-slung chassis (sports chassis)* and fully loaded vehicles.

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to avoid vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

WARNING

After driving through water or mud, the braking effect can be reduced due to moisture on the brake discs and brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brakes. ▶

Note

– Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.
– Always switch the Start-Stop-System* off when driving through water ⇨ *page 80*.

Tips

– Determine the depth before driving through water.
– Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
– Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
– Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion).

Catalytic converter

Applies to vehicles: with gasoline engine

It is very important that your emission control system (catalytic converter) is functioning properly to ensure that your vehicle is running in an environmentally sound manner.

- ▸ Always use lead-free gasoline ⇨ *page 210, Fuel supply*.
- ▸ Never run the tank down all the way to empty.
- ▸ Never put too much motor oil in your engine ⇨ *page 222, Adding engine oil*.
- ▸ Never try to push- or tow-start your vehicle.

The catalytic converter is an efficient "clean-up" device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine.

WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

– Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
– Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.
– Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.

Note

– Be aware that just one tank filling with **leaded** fuel will already seriously degrade the performance of the catalytic converter.
– Do not exceed the correct engine oil level ⇨ *page 222*.
– Do not drive until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat.
– Do not switch off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
– Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.
– To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:
  – Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.
  – Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the Emission Control System is operating properly, the exhaust gas can have a sulfur-like exhaust gas smell under some operating states. This depends on the sulfur ▶

content of the fuel being used. Using a different brand of fuel may help, or filling the tank with lead-free super grade gasoline.

Diesel particulate filter

Applies to vehicles: with diesel engine

The diesel particulate filter filters nearly all of the soot particles out of the exhaust. The filter cleans itself automatically under normal driving conditions. If the filter cannot clean itself (for example, because you are only driving short distances), the filter becomes clogged with soot and the  symbol for the diesel particulate filter illuminates ⇨ *page 20*.

WARNING

- Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because the high temperature of the diesel particulate filter could start a fire.
- Do not apply an underbody protectant in the exhaust system area or a fire could start.

Placing your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a longer time, contact your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, maintenance and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the battery ⇨ *page 228*.

Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

General

Your personal style of driving will determine the economy of your vehicle, as well as exhaust and noise levels.

Fuel economy, environmental impact, and wear on your engine, brakes and tires largely depend on three factors:

– your personal driving style
– operating conditions
– technical limitations

If you anticipate what you need to do next and drive economically, you can easily cut your fuel consumption by 10-15 percent. This section will give you some tips on how you can help the environment and your pocketbook.

Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.

Drive smoothly and keep a lookout ahead

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating.

▸ Avoid unnecessary accelerating and braking.

Vehicles use the most fuel when they are accelerating. If you anticipate what is going to happen next, you will need to brake less and, thus, accelerate less. Let the vehicle coast whenever possible - for example when you see that the next traffic light is red.

Avoid full throttle

Driving at moderate speeds saves fuel and improves your mileage.

▸ Try and keep well below your car's maximum speed.

Accelerating gently reduces fuel consumption, engine wear, and does not disturb the environment.

Fuel consumption, exhaust emissions and engine noise increase disproportionately at high speeds. If you drive at approximately three quarters of top speed, fuel consumption will be reduced by one half. Never drive faster than the posted speed limit and weather conditions permit.

Reducing unnecessary idling

Even when your car is just idling it burns up fuel.

- ▸ Shut the engine off when you are not driving the vehicle.
- ▸ Do not warm up the vehicle by letting the engine run at idle.

The idling phase is automatically reduced for vehicles with the Start-Stop-System. It is efficient to switch off the engine in vehicles without the Start-Stop-System when stopped at railroad crossings and long red lights. Turning the engine off for just 30-40 seconds saves more fuel than is burned by starting the engine again.

It takes a long time for the engine to warm up fully when it is running at idle. However, wear and noxious emissions are especially high when the engine is warming up. So you should drive away as soon as you start the engine and avoid running at high rpms while the engine is still warming up.

Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.

Regular maintenance

A badly tuned engine unnecessarily wastes a lot of fuel.

- ▸ Have your vehicle serviced at regular intervals.

By having your vehicle regularly serviced by an Audi dealer helps to ensure that it runs properly and economically. The condition of your vehicle not only affects its safety and ability to hold its value, it also affects **fuel consumption**.

Check your oil each time you fill your tank.

The amount of oil used is related to engine load and speed.

It is normal for the oil consumption of a new engine to reach its lowest value after a certain mileage has been driven.

You must drive your vehicle about 3,000 miles (5,000 kilometers) before you can properly assess oil consumption.

This also applies to fuel consumption and engine output.

Note

- – Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
- – Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
- – Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

Fewer short trips

Fuel consumption will always be relatively high on short trips.

- ▸ Try to avoid driving short distances with a cold engine.

The engine and catalytic converter have to reach their optimal **operating temperature** to reduce fuel consumption and noxious emissions effectively.

Just after starting, a cold engine in a mid-size car only achieves a fuel economy of 6-8 miles per gallon (30-40 l/100 km). After about a half a mile, fuel economy climbs to 12 mpg (20 l/100 km). After about *2.5* miles (4 km), the engine is at its proper operating temperature and fuel economy has reached a normal level. So you can see that you should avoid short trips whenever possible. ▶

The **outside temperature** is also critical in this regard. Your car consumes more fuel in the winter than in the summer.

Trailer mode

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your Audi was designed primarily for passenger transportation.

If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that the additional load will affect durability, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For this reason, always follow the operating and driving instructions provided and use common sense.

Note

If you are going to tow a trailer, you must activate the trailer operation mode ⇨ *page 201, Operating instructions*.

Technical requirements

Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be mounted securely on the vehicle's chassis at a *technically sound* location. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch.

Do not use a bumper hitch.

The hitch must be installed in such a way that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. No modifications should be made to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind ⇨ ⚠.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations.

The trailer hydraulic brake system must not be directly connected to the vehicle's hydraulic brake system.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations. Be sure to check with your Audi dealer for correct wiring, switches and relays.

Mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you *must* install extended mirrors. It is important that you *always* have clear vision to the rear.

WARNING

After removing the trailer hitch, do not store it in your vehicle. In case of sudden braking, the hitch could fly forward and injure you or your passengers.

Operating instructions

Maximum trailer weight

A trailer for your vehicle is limited to a typical class 1 or class 2 trailer.

Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to prevent it from shifting forward, backward or sideways.

Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving instructions on page 203*.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine work harder. It is important that the cooling system's performance is up to the additional load. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid. ▶

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the cold tire pressure listed under “Full load” on the label located on the driver's side B-pillar (visible when the door is open). Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers’ specifications.

Lights

Check to make sure both vehicle and trailer lights are working properly.

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch.

Adjusting the Audi drive select

Make sure the vehicle is on a level surface **before** hitching up the trailer and **before** adjusting the tongue weight. The vehicle must be in **auto** or **comfort** driving mode and not raised ⇨ *page 101*, ⇨ ⓘ.

Make sure that the vehicle is lowered. In Infotainment, select: CAR function button > **Lower** control button.

If you must drive under poor road conditions, you can raise the vehicle **after** coupling the trailer or **after** adjusting the tongue weight ⇨ *page 103*.

Note

– Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.
– Always select **auto** or **comfort** mode. Otherwise, the tongue load specified for your vehicle will no longer be applicable.

Driving instructions

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care and consideration.

To obtain the best possible handling of vehicle and trailer, please note the following:

- Do not tow a loaded trailer when your car itself is not loaded.
- Be especially careful when passing other vehicles.
- Observe speed limits.
- Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed.
- Always apply brakes early.
- Monitor the temperature gauge.

Weight distribution

Towing a loaded trailer with an empty car results in a highly unstable distribution of weight. If this cannot be avoided, drive at very low speeds only to avoid the risk of losing steering control.

A “balanced” rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible, while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.

Speed

The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed. Reduce your speed even more if load, weather or wind conditions are unfavorable - particularly when going downhill.

Reduce vehicle speed **immediately** if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying. **Do not try to stop the swaying by accelerating.**

Observe speed limits. In some areas, speeds for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.

Always apply brakes early. When driving downhill, shift into a lower gear to use the engine ▶

braking effect to slow the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.

Air suspension*

When driving with a trailer, activate the trailer mode of the air suspension. Switch the air suspension trailer mode on when you are towing a trailer. This will limit the regulation by the air suspension while driving. Select in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Air susp.: towing** > **On**.

Coolant temperature

The coolant temperature gauge ⇨ *page 10* must be observed carefully. The coolant temperature can increase if you drive on long inclines in a low gear at high engine speeds. Reduce your speed immediately if the LEDs in the top part of the display turn on.

For more information about indicator lights, refer to ⇨ *page 15*.

WARNING

Anyone not properly restrained in a moving vehicle is at a much greater risk in an accident. Never let anyone ride in your car who is not properly wearing the restraints provided by Audi.

Trailer mode notes

Important to know

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and different weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic. Keep practicing until you have become completely familiar with the way your vehicle-trailer combination behaves and responds.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Backing up with a trailer generally requires steering action opposite to that when backing up your vehicle without a trailer.

Maintain a greater distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop. To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes.

Tips

- Do not tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.
- If you tow a trailer, your Audi may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load ⇨ *page 274*.

Parking on a slope

Do not park on a slope with a trailer. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

When parking:

- Apply the foot brake.
- Have someone place chocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels.
- With chocks in place, slowly release the brakes until the wheel chocks absorb the load.
- Turn the wheels towards the curb.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Select the P selector lever position.

When restarting after parking:

- Apply the foot brake.
- Start the engine.
- Select the D/S selector lever position.
- Release the parking brake and slowly pull out and away from the wheel chocks.
- Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel chocks. ▶

Tips

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to P before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may have to use more force later to move the lever out of the P position.

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The necessary care products can be obtained from your authorized Audi dealer. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Preferably use environmentally-friendly products when buying cleaning agents.
- Do not dispose of leftover cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits remain on the vehicle, the more the surface may be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicles with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at seals on side windows, doors, the hood, the rear lid or the sunroof* or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 inches (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use rotary nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car washes

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and roof* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working down using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To avoid damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To avoid damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a shammy.

WARNING

- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator to reduce the risk of accidents.

▶

162.561.4GA.23

– To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
– After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

Note

– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must retract the rear spoiler if necessary, and fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
– To prevent paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges or similar items.
– Matte finish painted vehicle components:
  – To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  – Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  – Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle parts painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, refer to an authorized Audi dealer. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	⇨ *page 50, Cleaning windshield wiper blades*
Headlights/ tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary

Component	Situation	Solution
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 271*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then protect with hard wax; for questions, refer to an authorized Audi dealer.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Protect with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution[a)] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 205*

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Internal cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windows	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution[a)], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)], allow to dry before letting them retract

Component	Situation	Solution
Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution[a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary[a)]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Wool cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	fresh stains: absorbent cloth dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather dried stains: Oil cleaning spray
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use specially-colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as plastic parts

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

Note

– **Headlights/tail lights**
  – Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  – Do not use any cleaning product that contains alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
– **Wheels**
  – Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  – Damage to the protective layer on the rims such as stone chips or scratches must be repaired immediately.
– **Sensors/camera lenses**
  – Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  – Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
– **Door windows**
  – Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To ▶

avoid scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
- Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
- To avoid damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.

– **Decorative parts/trim**
- Never use chrome care or cleaning products.

– **Paint**
- To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
- To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
- Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately - these could damage the paint.

– **Displays**
- To avoid scratches, do not use dry cleaning methods on displays.

– **Controls**
- Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.

– **Safety belts**
- Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
- Never clean safety belts or their components chemically or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
- If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized dealer.

– **Textiles/artificial leather/Alcantara**
- Never treat artificial leather/Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remove or similar products.
- Have a specialist remove stubborn stains to prevent damage.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- Objects with sharp edges such as zippers, rivets on clothing or belts can cause damage to the surface.
- Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather**
- Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
- Objects with sharp edges such as zippers, rivets on clothing or belts can cause damage to the surface.
- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
- Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
- To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

- Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
- Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.

Fuel and Refueling

Gasoline

Fuel supply

Applies to vehicles: with gasoline engine

Using the right fuel helps keep the environment clean and prevents engine damage.

Fuel recommendation

The fuel recommended for your vehicle is **unleaded premium** grade gasoline. Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (95 RON). For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can also be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI or RON.

Your vehicle may also be operated using unleaded regular gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI/91 RON. However, using 87 AKI/91 RON octane fuel will slightly reduce engine performance.

Use unleaded gasoline only. Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

For more information on refueling your vehicle, see ⇨ *page 212*.

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by premature ignition and detonation. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

Gasoline most commonly used in the United States and Canada has the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

– Premium Grade: 91 - 96 AKI

– Regular Grade: 87 - 90 AKI

Explanation of the abbreviations:

AKI = **A**nti **K**nock **I**ndex = (R+M)/2 = (RON+MON)/2

RON = **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber

MON = **M**otor **O**ctane **N**umber.

Note

– Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.
– Do **not** use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to control exhaust emissions.

Blended gasoline

Applies to vehicles: with gasoline engine

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
– Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must not contain more than 15% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you ▶

fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Note

- Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.
- If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
- Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
- Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
- If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.

Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, carbon deposit build-ups can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Diesel fuel

Applies to vehicles: with diesel engine

Always use ULSD (Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel) No. 2. The ULSD No. 2 meets the ASTM D975.

Diesel fuel with concentrations of biodiesel higher than 5 % such as B11, B20 or B100 are strictly prohibited.

Service station fuel pumps are labeled with the correct fuel information for easy recognition by the user. If the diesel fuel pump is not labeled ask the station operator what fuel is being dispensed before filling up your vehicle.

ULSD No. 2 may not be available outside the USA and Canada. Be sure to check before traveling to other countries.

ULSD No. 2 can become thicker in very cold temperatures, and this can impair the engine's starting and running. Depending on the season, gas stations provide ULSD No. 2 that flows better in cold temperatures so that you can continue operating your vehicle as usual.

Note

- Your vehicle's diesel engine was designed soley for use with ULSD No. 2. Therefore, never use gasoline, heating oil, other fuels or flow improvers. These contain substances that will severely damage the fuel system and the engine. Such damage will not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- If you put any amount of incorrect fuel in the fuel tank, do not start the engine under any circumstances. Immediately contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

These fuels contain substances that can severely damage the fuel system and the engine if the engine is started.

Refueling

Fuel filler neck

The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually - for detailed instructions see ⇨ *page 214*.

You can find the fuel tank capacity of your vehicle in ⇨ *page 272*.

The label on the inside of the fuel filler flap tells you the correct fuel for your vehicle. For more information about fuel specifications, see ⇨ *page 210*.

Your vehicle fuel tank has an onboard refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle. In order to fill the tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully.

WARNING

Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Gas canisters and other containers used to transport fuel can be dangerous. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852 - 86).

Note

Never drive your vehicle until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. Gasoline could enter the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

Refuelling

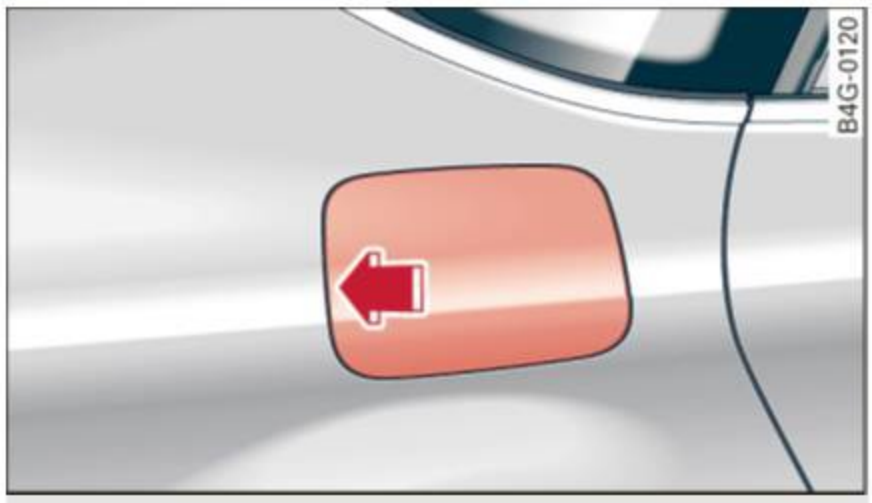


Fig. 180 Right rear vehicle side: Opening the fuel filler flap

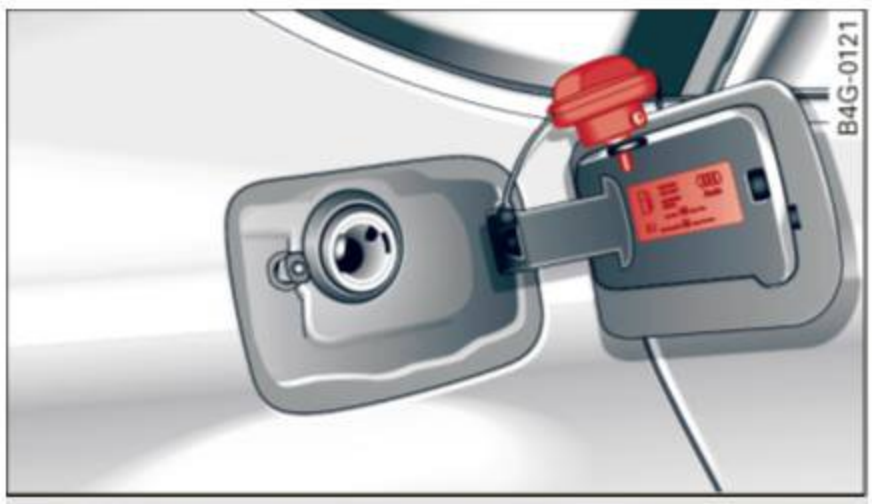


Fig. 181 Fuel filler flap with attached fuel cap

When activating the central locking, the fuel filler flap is automatically unlocked or locked. Refuel the vehicle with the ignition switched *off*.

Taking the fuel cap off

- Press the left side of the fuel filler flap to open it ⇨ *fig. 180* - arrow -.
- Unscrew fuel filler cap counter-clockwise and hang it on the fuel filler flap ⇨ *fig. 181*.
- Check the label on the inside of the fuel filler flap to determine if the vehicle must be fueled with gasoline or diesel fuel.

Refuelling procedure

- Insert the fuel nozzle from the gasoline pump into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go.
- Select a medium refuelling rate so that the nozzle switches off automatically when the tank is full.

Putting the fuel cap back on

- After filling your tank, twist the fuel filler cap clockwise as far as it will go.
- Close the fuel filler flap. ▶

To avoid fuel spilling or evaporating from the fuel tank always close fuel filler cap properly and completely. An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL lamp ⇨ *page 28* to come on.

WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion and severe burns.

- Fuel is highly flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.
- Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the fuel filler neck could cause fuel to spray out of filler neck or to overflow. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel can cause a fire.
- Never use a cellular telephone while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.
- Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.
- Never smoke or have an open flame anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container.
- For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle. The container, full or empty may leak and could cause a fire, especially in a crash.
- If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following:
  - Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment, or on the trunk). Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.
  - Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling.
  - Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.
  - If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and cause a fire.
  - Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.
  - Always observe local and state/provincial laws regarding the use, storage and transportation of fuel containers.
  - Make certain the fuel container meets industry standards (ANSI / ASTM F852–86).

Note

If any fuel has spilled onto the car, it should be removed immediately to prevent damage to the paint.

For the sake of the environment

As soon as the correctly operated nozzle switches off automatically for the first time, the tank is full. Do not try to add more fuel because fuel may spill out. In addition, the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled - causing the fuel to overflow when it becomes warm and pollute the environment.

Tips

- Running your engine while refuelling may cause vapors to escape or even cause fuel to spill out of the tank. This would then shut off the fuel nozzle before the tank is full.
- Do not refuel your vehicle with the ignition switched on. The fuel gauge may otherwise not indicate the correct fuel level after refuelling.
- Diesel vehicles* are equipped with a diesel misfueling protector. It allows the vehicle to be fueled only with a diesel fuel pump nozzle. A worn or damaged nozzle or a nozzle that is too small may not be able to open the diesel misfueling protector. If this is the ▶

case, try turning the nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different fuel pump or see your authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility for assistance.
– The fuel filler flap of your vehicle is not locked when you lock the vehicle from the inside.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the central locking system is faulty, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.



Fig. 182 Right side trim in the luggage compartment: removing the trim

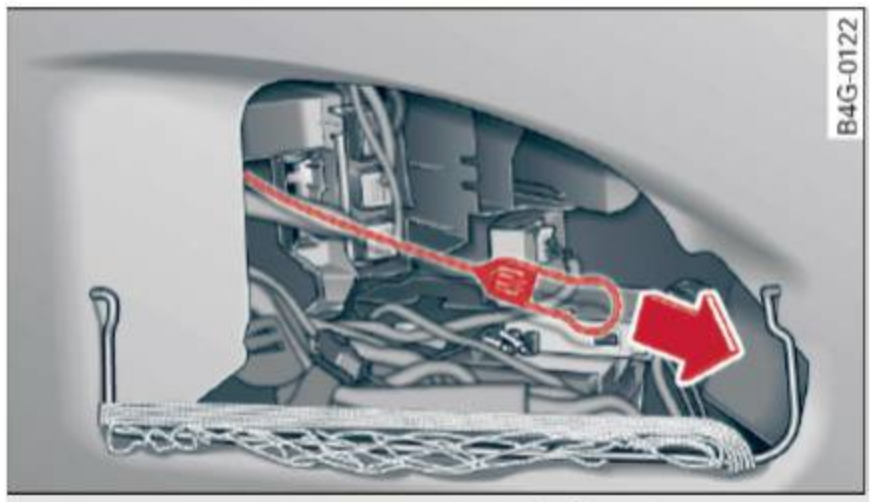


Fig. 183 Luggage compartment: Fuel filler door emergency release

Removing the side trim

- ▸ To remove the right side trim, first remove the retainer from the mounts ⇨ *fig. 182*.
- ▸ Turn both locking mechanisms 90° to the left using a coin or a similar object and remove the locking mechanisms.
- ▸ Tilt the retainer upward and pull the trim out. Lay the trim down on its side, because there is an electrical wire for the socket* on the back.

Fuel filler door emergency release

- ▸ Loosen the strap from its bracket and pull on it ⇨ *fig. 183* ⇨ (!). You can now open the fuel filler door as usual ⇨ *page 212*.

(!) Note

Only pull on the loop until you feel resistance. You will not hear it release. Otherwise you could damage the emergency release mechanism.

Selective catalytic reduction

General information

Applies to vehicles: with selective catalytic reduction

In vehicles with selective catalytic reduction, a urea solution (AdBlue) is injected into the exhaust system before a nitrogen oxide catalytic converter to reduce nitrogen emissions.

The AdBlue is carried in a separate tank in the vehicle. The AdBlue usage accounts for approximately 0.5% to 2.5% of the diesel fuel that is used.

When a message about refilling the AdBlue appears in the instrument cluster display, you must refill the AdBlue yourself or have it refilled by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ *page 215*.

(i) Tips

– The instrument cluster display indicates the distance remaining that can be driven ⇨ *page 215*. If the AdBlue tank is completely empty, the engine will not start again after the ignition is switched off.
– AdBlue is required by law to operate this vehicle.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to vehicles: with selective catalytic reduction

The display indicates if the AdBlue level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

AdBlue level low

You will be informed if the AdBlue in the tank drops below a certain level.

Please refill AdBlue. Range 1500 mi (2400 km)

This message appears when there is only enough AdBlue left to drive the distance indicated in the driver information system. Fill the AdBlue.

AdBlue Refill AdBlue! No restart in 600 mi (1000 km)! See owner's manual

This message appears when there is only enough AdBlue left to drive the distance indicated in the driver information system. Fill the AdBlue. Otherwise the engine will not start again if you stop it once the distance indicated has been driven. You can also check the remaining distance in the on-board computer*.

AdBlue Refill AdBlue! No restart! See owner's manual

This message appears when the AdBlue tank is empty. Fill the AdBlue. Otherwise you will not be able to start the engine again once you stop it.

The AdBlue must be refilled when the amount in the tank has reached the minimum level ⇨ *page 215, Filling AdBlue*.

Incorrect filling/system malfunction

A message appears if the AdBlue tank was filled with a fluid other than AdBlue and the system has detected that the tank was filled incorrectly, or if there is a system malfunction.

AdBlue AdBlue: System fault! No restart in 600 mi (1000 km). See owner's manual.

This message appears when it is only possible to drive the distance indicated in the driver information system. Drive to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected. Otherwise the engine will not start again if you stop it once the distance indicated has been driven.

AdBlue AdBlue: System fault No restart! See owner's manual

This message appears if the system has detected that the tank was filled incorrectly or that there is a malfunction. Drive immediately to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected. Otherwise you will not be able to start the engine again once you stop it.

Filling AdBlue

Applies to vehicles: with selective catalytic reduction

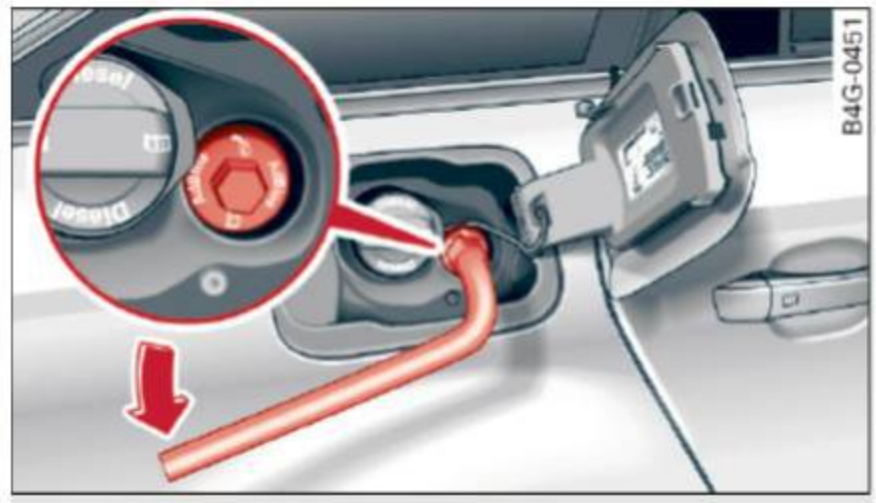


Fig. 184 Right rear vehicle side: removing the AdBlue cap

The AdBlue filler tube is located near the diesel filler tube. Add at least 1.5 gallons (5.7 liters) of AdBlue. This is the minimum amount required to ensure the system detects the refilling and to start the engine. You can add a maximum of approximately 4.5 gallons (17 liters).

Requirement: The request to add AdBlue must appear in the instrument cluster display.

- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ Open the tank door ⇨ *page 212*.
- ▸ Turn the tank cap counterclockwise with the lug wrench from the vehicle tool kit to remove it ⇨ *fig. 184*.
- ▸ Fill the AdBlue with the bottle ⇨ *page 216* or the canister ⇨ *page 216*.

WARNING

AdBlue can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if necessary. ▶

Note

– Only use AdBlue that conforms to the standard ISO 22241-1. Do not mix any additives with the AdBlue and do not dilute it with water.
– Do not add AdBlue to the diesel tank or add diesel fuel to the AdBlue tank. Mixing can lead to damage to the engine and the AdBlue tank system.
– AdBlue attacks surfaces such as painted vehicle components, plastic and carpet. Remove the fluid as quickly as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of cold water. If the AdBlue has already crystallized, use warm water and a sponge. AdBlue residue that is not removed will crystallize and can damage the affected surface.
– Do not store refill bottles or canisters permanently in the vehicle. If the container leaks, the escaping AdBlue could damage the vehicle interior.
– Do not allow AdBlue to come into contact with clothing. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water.

Tips

Follow the AdBlue manufacturer's instructions for use and storage.

Refilling AdBlue with a bottle

Applies to vehicles: with selective catalytic reduction

- ▸ Remove the cap from the refill bottle ⇨ ⚠ *in Filling AdBlue on page 215*, ⇨ (!) *in Filling AdBlue on page 216*.
- ▸ Position the bottle on the filler tube and turn the bottle clockwise until it stops turning.
- ▸ Press lightly against the bottom of the bottle to empty it. Continue pressing the bottom of the bottle until it is empty or until fluid stops flowing into the tank.
- ▸ Turn the bottle to the left without pressing on the bottom.
- ▸ Close the filler neck ⇨ *page 217, Completing AdBlue refill*.

Tips

– You can obtain refill bottles from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– A refill bottle contains approximately 0.5 gallon (1.9 liters) of AdBlue.

Refilling AdBlue with a canister

Applies to vehicles: with selective catalytic reduction

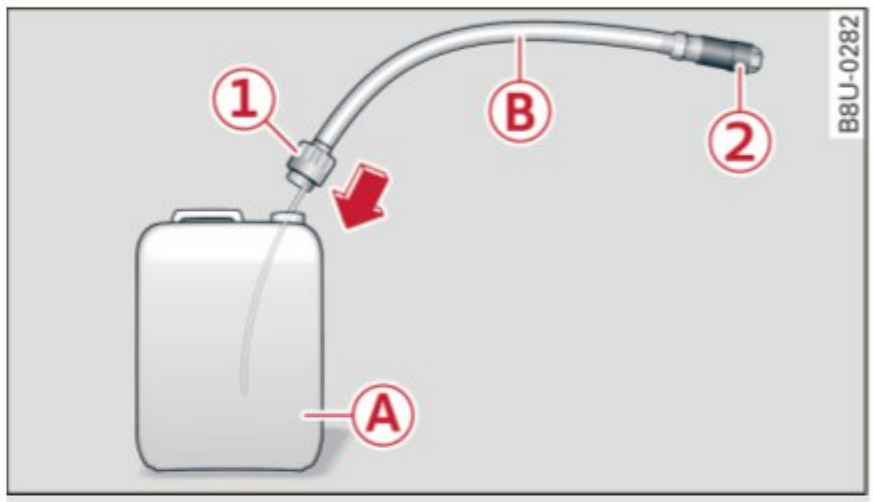


Fig. 185 Canister with hose

- ▸ Remove the cover on the refill canister ⇨ ⚠ *in Filling AdBlue on page 215*, ⇨ (!) *in Filling AdBlue on page 216*.
- ▸ Secure the end of the hose (1) on the opening in the canister (A) by turning the hose to the right.
- ▸ Remove the cap (2) from the other end of the hose (B).
- ▸ Position the end of the hose (2) on the filler neck in the vehicle and turn the hose to the right to tighten it.
- ▸ Lift the canister up and then tip it. Continue holding the canister in a tipped position until it is empty or until no more fluid flows into the tank.
- ▸ Remove the canister and close the filler neck ⇨ *page 217, Completing AdBlue refill*.

Note

Only use refill canisters that are approved for your vehicle. Using other systems can cause AdBlue to leak.

Tips

– An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi repair facility can tell you which refill canisters are approved for your vehicle. ▶

– A refill canister contains 1.3 gallons (5 liters) of AdBlue.

Completing AdBlue refill

Applies to vehicles: with selective catalytic reduction

Closing the filler neck

- ▸ Turn the cap to the right on the filler neck with the wheel wrench until the cap clicks into place. This tightens the cap to the specification ⇨ ⚠ *in Filling AdBlue on page 215*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Filling AdBlue on page 216*.
- ▸ Then press on the left side of the tank door until you hear it lock.

After filling

The vehicle must be driven. The system may take up to two minutes to detect that the AdBlue has been filled.

- ▸ If there was no AdBlue left in the tank and a range of **0 mi (0 km)** was shown in the display, switch the ignition on for about 30 seconds before starting the engine.

Checking and Filling

Hood

Releasing the engine hood

The engine hood is released from inside the vehicle.

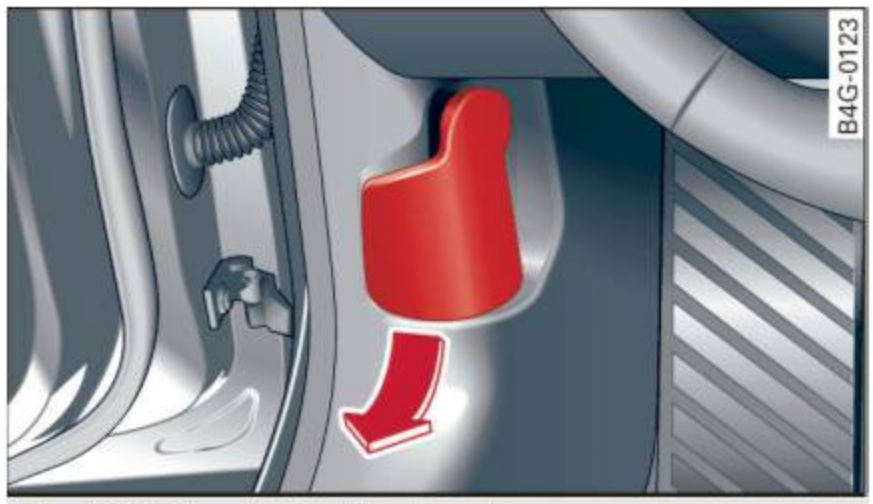


Fig. 186 Driver footwell: release lever

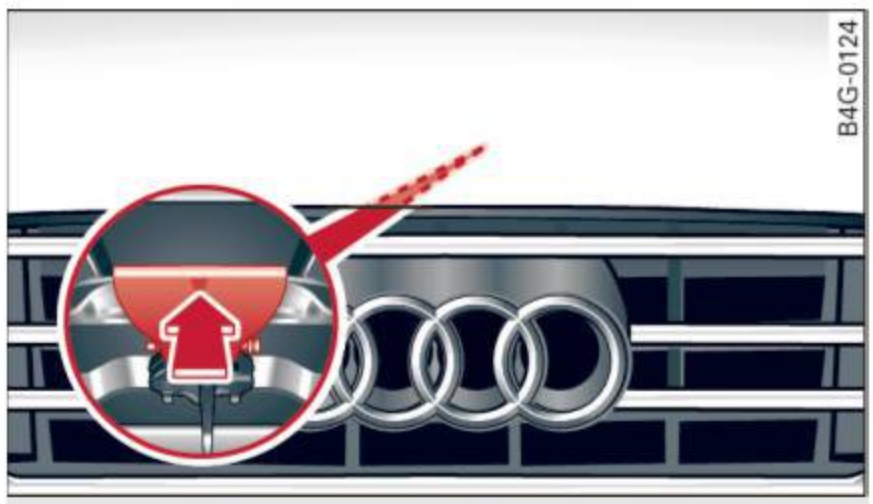


Fig. 187 Rocker switch under the hood

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

- ▸ With the driver's door open, pull the lever under the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 186*.
- ▸ Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press the rocker switch under the hood upward ⇨ *fig. 187*. This releases the catch.
- ▸ Open the hood.

⚠ WARNING

Hot engine coolant can burn you.

– To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.

Working in the engine compartment

Be especially careful whenever you work in the engine compartment.

Whenever you must perform any work in the engine compartment, for example checking and filling different fluids, there is a risk of injury, burns and accidents. To prevent personal injury always observe the following WARNINGS. The engine compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

To help avoid injury, before you check anything under the hood:

– Turn off the engine.
– Switch off the ignition.
– Apply the parking brake.
– Move selector lever to P (Park).
– Always let the engine cool down. Hot components will burn skin on contact.
– To reduce the risk of being burned, never open the hood if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen or heard before carefully opening the hood.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Never spill fluids on hot engine components. They can cause a fire.
– Never touch the radiator fan. The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly.
– Never open the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is still warm. The coolant system is pressurized and hot coolant could spray out.
– Protect your face, hands and arm from steam or hot engine coolant by placing a thick rag over the cap when you open the coolant reservoir. ▸

– Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
– If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  – Always disconnect the battery.
  – Never smoke or work near heaters or open flames. Fluids in the engine compartment could start a fire.
  – Keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
– To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started, never touch:
  – Ignition cables
  – Other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system.
– If you must perform a check or repair with the engine running:
  – First, fully apply the parking brake, move selector lever to P (Park).
  – Always use extreme caution to prevent clothing, jewelry, or long hair from getting caught in the radiator fan, V-belts or other moving parts, or from contacting hot parts. Tie back hair before starting, and do not wear clothing that will hang or droop into the engine.
– Minimize exposure to emission and chemical hazards ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When adding fluids, always make sure that they are poured into the proper container or filler opening, otherwise serious damage to vehicle systems will occur.

For the sake of the environment

To detect leaks in time, inspect the vehicle floor pan from underneath regularly. If you see spots from oil or other vehicle fluids, have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Audi dealer.

Closing the engine hood

▸ Pull the hood down until the pressure from the struts is reduced.
▸ Let the hood *drop down* and latch in place. *Do not try to push it shut*; it may fail to engage ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

A hood that is not completely latched could fly up and block your view while driving.
– When you close the engine hood, check it to make sure the safety catch has properly engaged. The hood should be flush with the surrounding vehicle body parts.
– If you notice while driving that the hood is not secured properly, stop at once and close it.

Engine compartment

Engine compartment overview

These are the most important items that you can check.

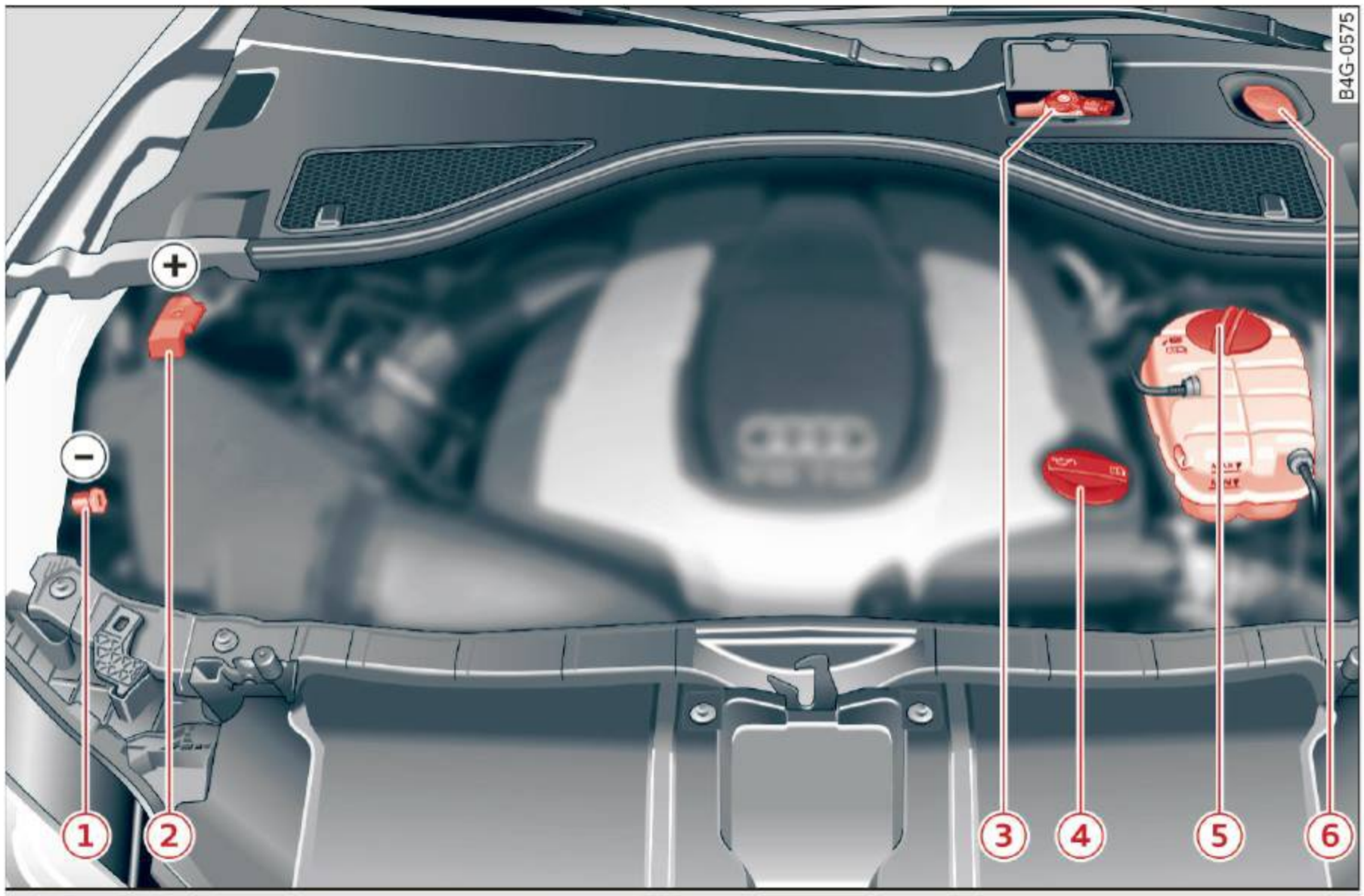


Fig. 188 Typical layout for containers and engine oil filler cap

① Jump start point (-) with hex head screw 230, 265
② Jump start point (+) under a cover 230, 265
③ Brake fluid reservoir ( ) 227
④ Engine oil filler cap ( ) 222
⑤ Coolant expansion tank ( ) 224
⑥ Windshield/headlight washer container ( ) 231

The engine oil filler neck (item ④) may be located in a different area depending on the version of the engine.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 218.*

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

The service interval display in the instrument cluster of your vehicle will inform you when it is time for an oil change. We recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized Audi Service Advisor.

If you have to top off the oil between oil changes, use the Audi oil quality standard specified in the table. ▶

	Audi oil quality standard
Gasoline engine	VW 502 00 or VW 504 00
Diesel engine	VW 507 00

Using the proper engine oil is important for the functionality and service life of the engine. Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality oil which can usually be used throughout the entire year.

Note

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

– Use only a high quality engine oil that expressly complies with the Audi oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage.
– Do not mix any lubricants or other additives into the engine oil. Doing so can cause engine damage.

Tips

If you need to add oil and there is none available that meets the Audi oil quality standard your engine requires, you may add a total of no more than 0.5 quart/liter of a high-quality "synthetic"oil that meets the following specifications.

– Vehicles with gasoline engine: ACEA A3 or API SM with a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40.
– Vehicles with diesel engine: ACEA C3 or API CF with a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30 or SAE 5W-30.
– For more information about engine oil that has been approved for your vehicle, please contact either your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Customer Relations at 1 (800) 822-2834 or visit our web site at www.audiusa.com or www.audicanada.ca.

Engine oil consumption

The engine in your vehicle depends on an adequate amount of oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts.

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period (see ⇨ *page 196*) consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.

With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to regular and frequent checking of the oil level, see **Note**.

If the yellow engine oil level warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up, you should check the oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 222*. Top off the oil at your earliest convenience ⇨ *page 222*.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 218*.

Note

Driving with an insufficient oil level is likely to cause severe damage to the engine. ▶

Tips

- **The oil pressure warning display is not an indicator of the oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**
- If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult your Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately.

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil level can be checked in the Infotainment system



Fig. 189 Infotainment: oil level indicator

- ▸ Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Shut the engine off when it is warm.
- ▸ Switch only the ignition back on.
- ▸ Wait approximately two minutes.
- ▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & control** > **Oil level**.
- ▸ Check the oil level in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 189*. Add engine oil if the bar of the oil level indicator is near "min" ⇨ *page 222*.

Depending on the way the vehicle is driven and the operating conditions, oil consumption can be up to 1/2 quart per 600 miles (0.5 liter per 1,000 km). Consumption may be higher within the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Because of this, the engine oil level must be checked regularly. It would be best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

Tips

The oil level indicator in the instrument cluster display is only an informational display. If the oil level is too low, a minimum oil warning appears in the instrument cluster. Add oil. If the hood was opened, the current oil level is shown in the instrument cluster the next time the ignition is switched on.

Adding engine oil



Fig. 190 Engine compartment: cover on the engine oil filler neck

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 218*.

- ▸ Shut the engine off.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap to the engine oil filling hole ⇨ *fig. 190*, ⇨ *page 220, fig. 188*.
- ▸ Carefully top off with 0.5 quarts (0.5 liters) of the appropriate oil ⇨ *page 220*.
- ▸ Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇨ *page 222, Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▸ Top off the oil again, if necessary.
- ▸ Screw the cap back on the filling hole.

WARNING

- While topping off, the oil must not come in contact with hot engine parts - fire hazard!

– The oil filler cap must be properly secured to prevent oil from being sprayed on the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running - fire hazard!
– If your skin has come in contact with the engine oil, you must subsequently cleanse it thoroughly.

Note

– Check the oil level using the MMI. If the message **Please reduce oil level** appears, contact your authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop to have excess oil extracted if necessary.
– **Audi does not recommend the use of oil additives. They may damage the engine and adversely affect your New Vehicle Warranty.**

For the sake of the environment

– Under no circumstances can the oil come in contact with the sewage network or the soil.
– Observe and follow legal regulations when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing the engine oil

We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 218*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

If you choose to change your oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:
– Wear eye protection.
– To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.
– When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
– Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
– Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
– Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.

Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
– Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded ▶

areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
– Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine coolant performs two functions: it keeps the engine from overheating and it protects the engine from freezing in the winter.

The cooling system is sealed and generally requires little attention.

The cooling system has been filled at the factory with a permanent coolant which does not need to be changed. The coolant consists of a mixture of specially conditioned water and the manufacturer's glycol-based coolant additive G13 antifreeze with anticorrosion additives (50% for USA models; 60% for Canadian models). This mixture both assures the necessary frost protection and protects metal components in the engine's cooling system from corrosion and scaling. It also raises the boiling point of the coolant.

Do not reduce the concentration of the coolant in the summer by adding plain water. **The proportion of coolant additive must be at least 50% but not more than 60%** to maintain antifreeze protection and cooling efficiency. If the coolant frost protection is too low, the coolant could freeze and damage the vehicle heating and engine cooling system.

For year-round driving, antifreeze is added at the factory for temperatures down to:

– - 31 °F (- 35 °C) USA
– - 40 °F (- 40 °C) Canada.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 218.*

Note

– Before winter sets in, have the coolant checked to see if the coolant additive in your vehicle is sufficient to meet the climate conditions. This is especially important if you live in a region where the winter is extremely cold. If necessary, increase the proportion of coolant additive to 60%.
– When adding coolant additive to your cooling system, remember:
  – We recommend using only coolant additive G12++ or G13 (check the label) for your vehicle. This coolant additive is available at authorized Audi dealers. Other types of antifreeze can significantly reduce corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion can cause a loss of coolant and serious engine damage.
– Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Checking the engine coolant level

The engine coolant level can be checked with a quick glance.



Fig. 191 Engine compartment: cover on the coolant expansion tank

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 218.* ▶

- ▸ Park your vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition.
- ▸ Read the engine coolant level from the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *fig. 191*, ⇨ *page 220, fig. 188*. With a cold engine, the coolant level should be between the “min” and “max” markings. When the engine is warm, the level may be slightly above the “max” marking.

The location of the coolant expansion tank can be seen in the engine compartment illustration ⇨ *page 220*.

To obtain an accurate reading, the engine must be switched off.

The expansion tank in your vehicle is equipped with an electric coolant level sensor.

When the coolant level is too low, the warning light in the Auto-Check System ⇨ *page 15* will illuminate until you add coolant and the level has been restored to normal. Even though there is an electric coolant level sensor, we still recommend you check the coolant level from time to time.

Coolant loss

Coolant loss may indicate a **leak** in the cooling system. In the event of coolant loss, the cooling system should be inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is not enough merely to add coolant.

In a **sealed** system, losses can occur only if the boiling point of the coolant is exceeded as a result of overheating.

WARNING

The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.

- – Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.
- – Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- – Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.
- – To avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.

Note

Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Adding coolant

Be very careful when adding engine coolant.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 218*.

- ▸ Requirement: There must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Turn off the engine.
- ▸ Let the engine cool down.
- ▸ Place a thick rag over the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 224, fig. 191* and **carefully** twist the cap counter-clockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 224, Coolant* up to the MAX marking.
- ▸ Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- ▸ Twist the cap on again *tightly*.

Replacement engine coolant must conform to exact specifications ⇨ *page 224, Coolant*.

We recommend using only coolant additive G12++, G13 or in an emergency G12+. Do **not** use a different additive. In an emergency use plain water until you can get the correct additive and can restore the correct ratio. This should be done as soon as possible.

If you have lost a considerable amount of coolant, then you should add cold antifreeze and cold water only when the engine is cold.

Always use *new* engine coolant when refilling. ▶

Do not fill coolant above the “MAX” mark. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.

WARNING

– The cooling system is under pressure and can get very hot. Reduce the risk of scalding from hot coolant by following these steps.
  – Turn off the engine and allow it to cool down.
  – Protect your face, hands and arms from escaping fluid and steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
  – Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light, downward pressure on the top of the cap.
  – To avoid being burned, do not spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under certain conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire.
– Antifreeze is poisonous. Always store antifreeze in its original container and well out of the reach of children.
– If you drain the coolant, it must be caught and safely stored in a proper container clearly marked “poison”.

Note

– Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. Seek professional assistance.
– Coolant pollutes the environment and could cause an engine fire. Excess coolant will be forced out through the pressure relief valve in the cap when the engine becomes hot.
– If, in an emergency, only water can be added, the correct ratio between water and antifreeze ⇨ *page 224* must be restored as soon as possible.

For the sake of the environment

Drained coolant should not be reused. Always dispose of used coolant while observing all environmental regulations.

Radiator fan

The radiator fan switches on automatically by itself.

An auxiliary electric radiator fan switches on and off depending on coolant temperature and other vehicle operating conditions.

After you switch the engine off, the auxiliary fan can continue running for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition off. It can even switch on again later by itself ⇨ ⚠, if

– the temperature of the engine coolant rises due to the heat build-up from the engine in the engine compartment, or
– the engine compartment heats up because the vehicle is parked in intense sunlight.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of personal injury never touch the radiator fan.
– The auxiliary electric fan is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly even when the engine is not running.
– The auxiliary radiator fan switches on automatically when the engine coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level



Fig. 192 Engine compartment: cover on the brake fluid reservoir

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 218*.

- ▸ Read the brake fluid level from the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *fig. 192*, ⇨ *page 220, fig. 188*. The brake fluid level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

The location of the brake fluid reservoir can be seen in the engine compartment illustration ⇨ *page 220*.

The fluid level may drop *slightly* after some time due to the automatic adjustment of the brake pads. This is not cause for alarm.

If the brake fluid level falls *considerably* below the "MIN" mark, the brake warning/indicator light BRAKE (U.S. models)/ (Canadian models) will come on ⇨ *page 14*. Do not continue to operate the vehicle. The complete brake system should be thoroughly checked by an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified facility and the cause corrected. If the brake fluid level is too low, the brake warning/indicator light will illuminate. Contact an authorized Audi dealer **immediately**.

Changing brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed by an experienced technician.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, corrosion in the brake system may result after a period of time. The boiling point of the brake fluid will also decrease considerably and decrease braking performance.

Therefore, the brake fluid must be changed **every two years**. Always use new brake fluid which conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard "FMVSS 116 DOT 4".

The brake fluid reservoir can be difficult to reach, therefore, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized **Audi dealer**. Your dealer has the correct tools, the right brake fluid and the know-how to do this for you.

⚠ WARNING

- Brake fluid is poisonous. It must be stored only in the closed original container out of the reach of children!
- Brake failure can result from old or inappropriate brake fluid. Observe these precautions:
  - Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J 1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Standard 116. Always check with your authorized Audi dealer to make sure you are using the correct brake fluid. The correct type of brake fluid is also indicated on the brake fluid reservoir.
- The brake fluid must be new. Heavy use of the brakes can cause a vapor lock if the brake fluid is left in the system too long. This can seriously affect the efficiency of the brakes as well as your safety. This could result in an accident.

Note

Brake fluid will damage the paint of your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of brake fluid as well as the special tools required and the necessary expertise, we recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by your authorized Audi dealer.

Battery

General information

Under **normal** operating conditions, the battery in your Audi does not need any maintenance. With *high* outside temperatures or long daily drives we recommend that you have the electrolyte level checked by a service facility. The electrolyte level should also be checked each time the battery is charged ⇨ *page 230*.

Have the battery checked when you take your vehicle in for service. You are well advised to replace a battery that is older than 5 years.

With certain types of airbag deployment, the battery is disconnected from the vehicle electrical system for safety reasons ⇨ ⚠ *in Repair, care and disposal of the airbags on page 158*.

Disconnecting the battery terminals

Some vehicle functions (power window regulators, for example) are lost if the battery terminals are disconnected. These functions have to be relearned after the battery terminals are connected again. To prevent this, the battery should only be disconnected from the vehicle electrical system when absolutely necessary for repairs.

Vehicles not driven for long periods

If you do not drive your vehicle over a period of several days or weeks, electrical components are gradually cut back or switched off. This reduces energy consumption and maintains starting capability over a longer period ⇨ *page 194*. Some of the convenience functions may not operate, such as the interior lights or power seat adjustment. The convenience functions will be available again when you switch on the ignition and start the engine.

Winter operation

During the winter months, battery capacity tends to decrease as temperatures drop. This is because more power is also consumed while starting, and the headlights, rear window defogger, etc., are used more often.

Avoid unnecessary power consumption, particularly in city traffic or when traveling only short distances. Let your authorized Audi dealer check the capacity of the vehicle battery before winter sets in ⇨ *page 230*. A well charged battery will not only prevent starting problems when the weather is cold, but will also last longer.

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for several weeks at extremely low temperatures, the vehicle battery should be removed and stored where it will not freeze. This will prevent it from being damaged and having to be replaced.

Working on the battery

Be especially careful when working on or near the battery.

The battery is located in the luggage compartment under the floor. Before you check anything in the luggage compartment, **read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠.

Always heed the **safety warnings**, when working on the vehicle battery or the vehicle electrical system to prevent injury.

The following WARNINGS are very important when working on the battery:

Always heed the following WARNING SYMBOLS and safety precautions when working on the battery.	
	**Always wear eye protection.**
	**Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Always wear gloves and eye protection.**
	**No** **- sparks** **- flames** **- smoking.**
	**When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.**
	**Always keep the battery well out of reach of children.**

WARNING

Whenever working on the battery or on the electrical system, there is the risk of injury, accident and even fire. Read and heed the following WARNINGS:

- Always wear eye protection. Do not let battery acid or any lead particles get on your skin or clothing. Shield your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or other injury.
- Battery acid contains sulfuric acid. Sulfuric acid can cause blindness and severe burns.
  - Always wear gloves and eye protection. Do not tilt the battery because acid could leak out of the ventilation openings.
  - If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and get medical attention.
  - If you should ingest any battery acid, seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not expose the battery to an open flame, electric sparks or an open light.
- Do not smoke.
- Do not interchange the positive and negative cables.
- When working on the battery, be sure not to short-circuit the terminals with tools or other metal objects. This would cause the battery to heat up very quickly, which could lead to damage or explosion and personal injury.
- When a battery is charged, it produces hydrogen gas which is explosive and could cause personal injury.
- Always keep the battery well out of the reach of children.
- Before work is done on the electrical system, disconnect the negative ground cable.
- Before performing any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine and ignition as well as any electrical equipment. The negative cable on the battery must be disconnected. If you are just going to replace a light bulb, then it is enough to switch off the lights.
- Before disconnecting the battery, switch off the anti-theft alarm system! Otherwise you will set off the alarm.
- When disconnecting the battery, first disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable.
- Before reconnecting the battery, make sure all electrical consumers are switched off. Reconnect the positive cable first and then the negative cable. Never interchange the cables - this could start a fire!
- Never charge a frozen or a thawed-out battery. It could explode! If a battery has frozen, then it must be replaced. A discharged battery can freeze over at 32 °F (0 °C).
- Make sure the vent hose is always attached to the opening on the side of the battery.
- Never use batteries which are damaged. There is the danger of an explosion! Always replace a damaged battery.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.

Note

- Do not disconnect the vehicle battery when the ignition is on or when the engine is running, otherwise, you will damage electronic components in the electrical system.
- If your vehicle is going to stand for a long period of time without being driven, protect the battery from “freezing”, otherwise it will be damaged and will then have to be replaced.
- When opening the doors, the windows lower approximately 10 mm automatically. This function is not available when the battery is disconnected, which means there is a risk that the door seal or the window could be damaged.

Battery charging

Starting the engine requires a well charged battery.

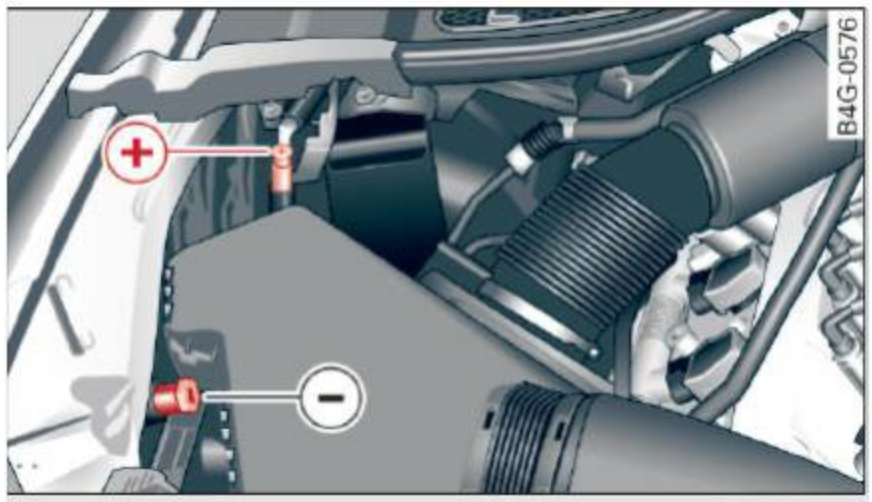


Fig. 193 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger and jump start cables

Always read and heed all WARNINGS below ⇨ ⚠ and ⇨ ⚠ *in Working on the battery on page 229*.

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers.
- ▸ Make sure the area is well ventilated when you charge the battery.
- ▸ Open the engine hood ⇨ *page 218*.
- ▸ Open the red cover on the positive pole ⇨ *fig. 193*.
- ▸ Connect the charger connectors according to the instructions to the **jump start bolts**. (Bolts under the red cover = "positive", Bolts with hex head = "negative").
- ▸ Only now plug the mains lead for the charging equipment into the wall outlet and turn it on ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ **Make sure the charging rate is not over 30 amps/14.8 Volt.**
- ▸ When the battery is fully charged: Turn the charging equipment off and remove the mains lead from the wall outlet.
- ▸ Now remove the clamps for the charging equipment.
- ▸ Close the red cover on the positive pole.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 219*.

A discharged battery can **freeze** at temperatures of only 32 F° (0 °C). Allow a frozen battery to thaw completely before attempting to charge it ⇨ ⚠. However, we recommend not using a thawed battery again because the battery casing can be cracked due to ice formation and can leak battery acid.

Battery charging (Maximum charging rate of 30 amps/14.8 Volt)

When charging at *low* voltages (e.g. with a **trickle charger**), the battery cables do not have to be disconnected first. The battery caps should *not* be opened when charging a battery.

It is not necessary to remove the battery from the luggage compartment, and it is also not necessary to disconnect the cables.

Fast charging the battery (charging rate above 14.8 Volts)

For technical reasons do not use a battery charger that uses voltage greater than 14.8 Volts to charge your vehicle's battery.

⚠ WARNING

Charging a battery can be dangerous.

- – Always follow the operating instructions provided by the battery charger manufacturer when charging your battery.
- – Never charge a frozen battery. It may explode because of gas trapped in the ice. Allow a frozen battery to thaw out first.
- – Do not reuse batteries which were frozen. The battery housing may have cracked and weakened when the battery froze.
- – Charge the battery in a well ventilated area. Keep away from open flame or electrical spark. Do not smoke. Hydrogen gas generated by the battery is explosive.
- – To reduce the danger of explosion, never connect or disconnect charger cables while the charger is operating.
- – Fast charging a battery is dangerous and should only be attempted by a competent technician with the proper equipment.
- – Battery acid that may spill during charging should be washed off with a solution of warm water and baking soda to neutralize the acid.

▶

Note

Never use a fast charger as a booster to start the engine. This will seriously damage sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc., as well as the battery charger.

Battery replacement

The new battery must have the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery.

Intelligent energy management in your vehicle is responsible for distributing the electrical energy throughout your vehicle ⇨ *page 194*. The intelligent energy management system will keep the engine battery charged better than vehicles without this system. To make sure the additional electrical energy is available once again after you have changed the battery, we recommend that you install batteries of the same type and manufacture only (the same as those installed at the time your vehicle was delivered). Specifications are listed on the battery housing. Your authorized dealer must code the battery in the energy management system to enable you to use the energy management functions correctly after replacing the battery.

The new battery must have the same capacity, voltage (12-volts), amperage, construction and plug sealing.

When installing the battery, make sure the ignition and all electrical consumers are switched off.

Note

Make sure the ventilation hose on the side of the battery is connected, otherwise fumes or battery acid can leak out.

– Vehicles with the Start-Stop-System* are equipped with a special cycle-proof AGM battery. Installing a different type of battery can cause problems in the vehicle electrical system. When replacing the vehicle battery, always install one with the same specifications as the original battery.

For the sake of the environment

Because of the problem of proper disposal of a battery, we recommend your authorized Audi dealer change the battery for you. Batteries contain sulfuric acid and lead and must always be disposed of properly in compliance with all environmental regulations. Disposing of vehicle batteries improperly is very dangerous to the environment.

Windshield/headlight washer container



Fig. 194 Engine compartment: cover on the windshield and headlight* washer fluid reservoir

The washer fluid container is marked with the symbol on its cap ⇨ *fig. 194*, ⇨ *page 220, fig. 188*.

- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 218*.
- Lift the filler cap tongue to add washer fluid. You can fill the container to the top.
- Press the cap back onto the filler neck after filling the container.

You can find the reservoir **capacity** in the table in ⇨ *page 272*.

Clean water should be used when filling up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on washer jets. Always add a glass cleaner solution (with frost protection in the winter). ▶

Note

Do not mix engine coolant antifreeze or any other additives to fill up the windshield washer reservoir.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

- ▸Check your tires regularly for damage (punctures, cuts, cracks and bulges). Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ▸If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
- ▸Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
- ▸Protect your tires from oil, grease and fuel.
- ▸Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.
- ▸Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

Tire designations

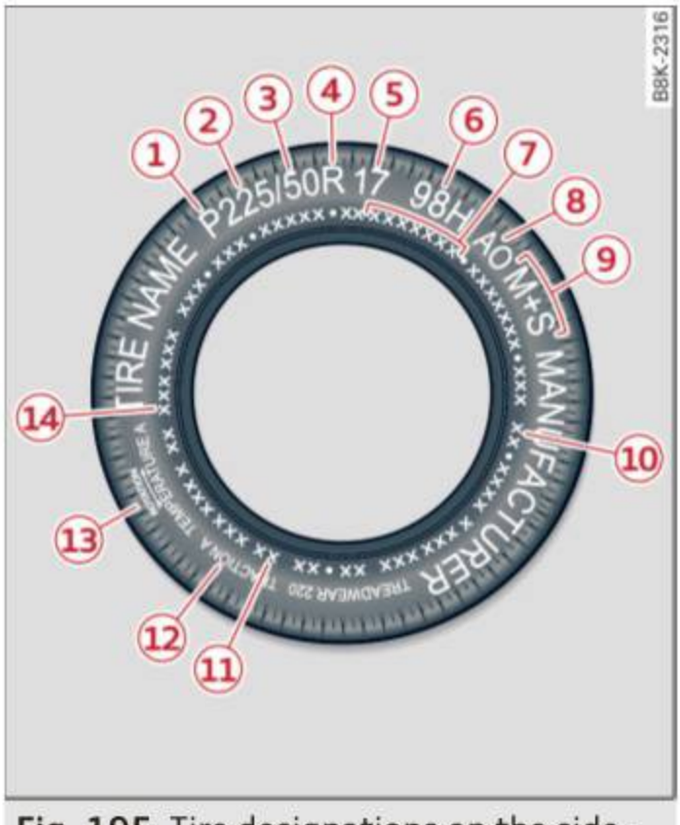


Fig. 195 Tire designations on the sidewall

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

P indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. T indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

R indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 248*.

"EXTRA LOAD", "xl" or "RF" indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code "ZR".

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2214 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2014.

⑧ Audi Original equipment tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation "AO" or "RO" have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards of safety and handling. Your authorized Audi dealer will be happy to provide more information. ▶

⑨ Mud and snow capability

"M/S" or "M+S" indicates the tire has characteristics that make it suitable for driving on mud and snow. ⛄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 250*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 259*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement. ▶

162.561.4GA.23

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of: ▶

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 236, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as ▶

"XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 234*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 248*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 242, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear. ▶

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2214 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2014. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 245*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 243, fig. 198* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 245* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ▸New tires do not yet have the optimum adhesion properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ▸Use tires of the same construction, size (rolling circumference) and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ▸Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ▸Audi recommends that you use Audi Original equipment tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire/rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

The spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle - for example, if winter tires or wide tires are installed - then only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

On **all wheel drive** vehicles, all four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by ▸

different tire speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

WARNING

–Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
–For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles - in some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.
–Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.
–Only use tires that are more than 6 years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.
–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.
–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear/damage



Fig. 196 Tire profile: Treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration and heavy braking increase tire wear.
–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility ▶

162.561.4GA.23

check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.

–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

The original tires on your vehicle have 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) high "wear indicators"⇨ *fig. 196* running across the tread. Marks on the tire sidewall (for example "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Wheel rotation

Rotating the wheels regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate wheels, install the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 259*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or different tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can especially have a negative effect on handling, on the risk aquaplaning when driving through water, when driving ▶

[1] Obey any applicable regulations in your country.

through curves and when braking, which increases the risk of an accident.

Tire pressure



Fig. 197 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

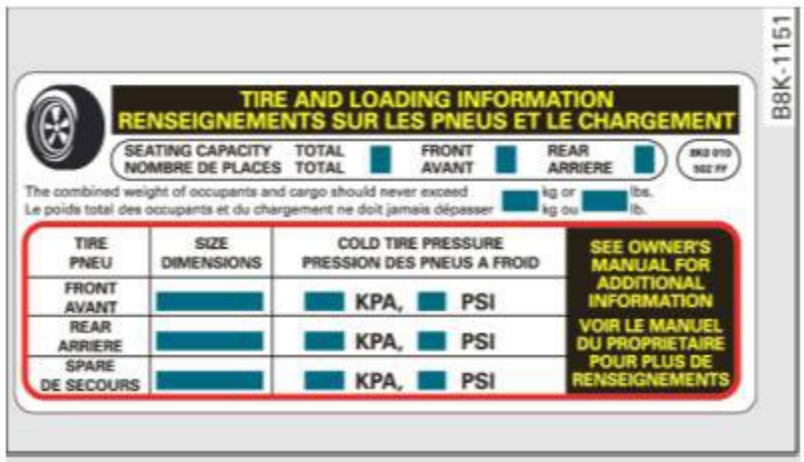


Fig. 198 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted in the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 197*, ⇨ *fig. 198*.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 245*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking/correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Check the label ⇨ *fig. 198* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System*: store the modified tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 252*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase ▸

the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 245, Tires and vehicle load limits*.

– The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.

– Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tips

Audi recommends using the tire pressure specified for a normal load ⇨ *table on page 245* or for a full load when the vehicle is partially loaded.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are differences between this information and the tire pressures specified on the label on the driver's side B-pillar, always follow the specification on the B-pillar label ⇨ *page 243, fig. 197*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed. ▶

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2/3* people)[a]				Maximum load			
		front		rear		front		rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
A7: 3.0L 6 cylinders	235/55 R17 99Y High Performance	32	220	29	200	35	240	38	260
	255/45 R18 99H All Season	32	220	29	200	35	240	38	260
	255/45 R18 99Y High Performance	32	220	29	200	35	240	38	260
	255/40 R19 100H XL All Season	35	240	32	220	38	260	41	280
	255/40 R19 100Y XL High Performance	36	250	32	220	38	260	41	280
	265/35 R20 99H XL All Season	35	240	32	220	38	260	41	280
	265/35 R20 99Y XL High Performance	36	250	32	220	38	260	41	280
	275/30 R21 98Y XL High Performance	38	260	33	230	39	270	41	280
S7: 4.0L 8 cylinders	265/35 R20 99Y XL High Performance	41	280	35	240	44	300	44	300
	255/40 R19 100Y XL High Performance	39	270	33	230	42	290	42	290
	275/30 R21 98Y XL High Performance	41	280	35	240	44	300	44	300

a) **Vehicles with 4 seating positions:** 2 people in the front, **Vehicles with 5 seating positions:** 2 people in the front, 1 person in the rear

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 243* and load limits ⇨ *page 245*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash. ▶

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar ⇨ *page 243, fig. 197*.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance. ▶

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.
–Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS"on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 243, fig. 197*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 243, fig. 197*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the ▶

available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▸ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 233, fig. 195*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, refer to ⇨ *page 256, After changing a wheel*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

▸ Use winter tires on all four wheels.
▸ Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
▸ Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠. Your authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
▸ Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 243*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 inch (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

WARNING

– Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.
– Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ⛄ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains improve traction in the snow.

▸ Only install snow chains on the front wheels. This applies also to vehicles with all wheel drive*. ▶

- ▸ Check and correct the seating of the snow chains if necessary after driving a few feet. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- ▸ Note the maximum permitted speed when driving with snow chains. Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h).

Snow chains not only improve the *driving* in winter road conditions, but also the *braking*.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized repair facility to see if you may use snow chains.

You must remove the chains when driving on roads that are *free* of snow. When roads are free of snow, snow chains can impair handling and damage the tires, and the chains will quickly be destroyed.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Snow chains can damage the rims/wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.
– Using snow chains that add more than 0.4 inch (10.5 mm) of height can severely damage the wheel housings and other vehicle components.
– Do not install and use snow chains if there is a malfunction in the adaptive air suspension*, because the vehicle height will be very low. If you drive with snow chains anyway, the wheel housings and other vehicle components can be severely damaged.

Low aspect ratio tires

Your Audi is factory-equipped with low aspect ratio tires. These tires have been thoroughly tested and been selected specifically for your model for their superb performance, road feel and handling under a variety of driving conditions. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for more details.

The low aspect ratio of these tires is indicated by a numeral of **55 or less** in the tire's size designation. The numeral represents the ratio of the tire's sidewall height in relation to its tread width expressed in percentage. Conventional tires have a height/width ratio of 60 or more.

The performance of low-aspect-ratio tires is particularly sensitive to improper inflation pressure. It is therefore important that low aspect ratio tires are inflated to the specified pressure and that the inflation pressure is regularly checked and maintained. Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip ⇨ *page 243*.

What you can do to avoid tire and rim damage

Low aspect ratio tires can be damaged more easily by impact with potholes, curbs, gullies or ridges on the road, particularly if the tire is underinflated.

In order to minimize the occurrence of impact damage to the tires of your vehicle, we recommend that you observe the following precautions:

– Always maintain recommended inflation pressures. Check your tire pressure every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) and add air if necessary.
– Drive carefully on roads with potholes, deep gullies or ridges. The impact from driving through or over such obstacles can damage your tires. Impact with a curb may also cause damage to your tires.
– After any impact, immediately inspect your tires or have them inspected by the nearest authorized Audi dealer. Replace a damaged tire as soon as possible.
– Inspect your tires every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage and wear. Damage is not always easy to see. Damage can lead to loss of air and underinflation, which could eventually cause tire failure. If you believe that a tire may have been damaged, replace the tire as soon as possible. ▸

– These tires may wear more quickly than others.
– Please also remember that, while these tires deliver responsive handling, they may ride less comfortably and make more noise than other choices.

Reduced performance in winter/cold season conditions

All tires are designed for certain purposes. The low aspect ratio, ultra high performance tires originally installed on your vehicle are intended for maximum dry and wet road performance and handling. They are not suitable for cold, snowy or icy weather conditions. If you drive under those circumstances, you should equip your vehicle with all-season or winter tires, which offer better traction under those conditions. We suggest you use the recommended snow or all-season tires specified for your vehicle, or their equivalent.

Refer to ⇨ *page 248* for more detailed information regarding winter tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 233, fig. 195*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. ▶

WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator appears

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.



Fig. 199 Instrument cluster: indicator light with message

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an indicator light (!) and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the Infotainment system again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 252*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for ▶

the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 243, fig. 198*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

– the tire pressure in one or more tires is too low.
– the tire has structural damage.
– the tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 252*.
– the spare tire* is installed.

Indicator lights

(!) Loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠. Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. Check/correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 252*.

TPMS (**T**ire **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tire pressure: System malfunction!**. If TPMS appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 252*. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure. You must check the tire pressure regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitoring system indicator may be delayed.
– Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tires with the identification “AO” or “RO” ⇨ *page 240* have been matched with your Audi tire pressure monitoring system. We recommend that you use these tires.

Storing tire pressures

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the Infotainment system.

▸ Make sure before storing that the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 243*.
▸ Switch the ignition on.
▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressures** > **Yes, store now**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Emergency assistance

Warning triangle

Applies to vehicles: With warning triangle



Fig. 200 Luggage compartment lid: warning triangle

The warning triangle placed in the vehicle at the factory is located in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ To open the cover, turn the locking mechanism and pull the cover downward.
- ▸ Remove the warning triangle from its holder.

The luggage compartment lid is only designed to hold the warning triangle offered by the original accessories program.

Vehicle tool kit

Vehicle tool kit and jack

The vehicle tool kit is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

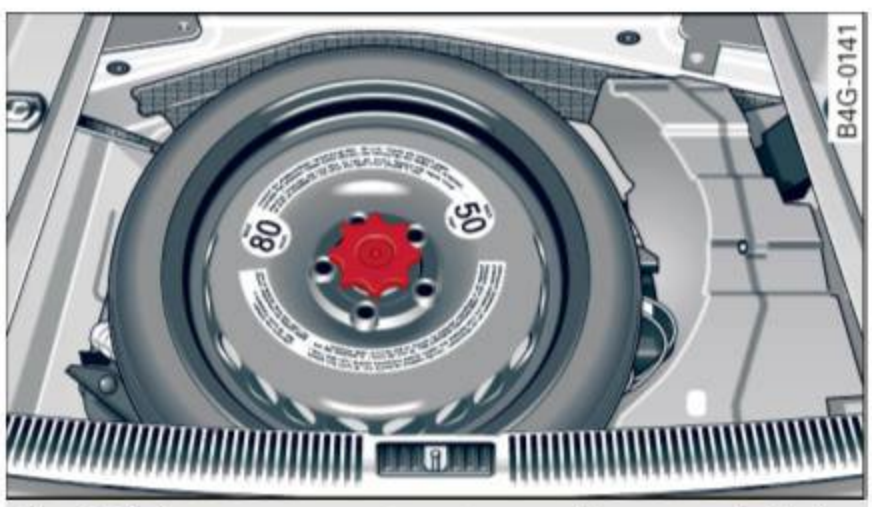


Fig. 201 Luggage compartment: cargo floor cover folded upward/spare tire

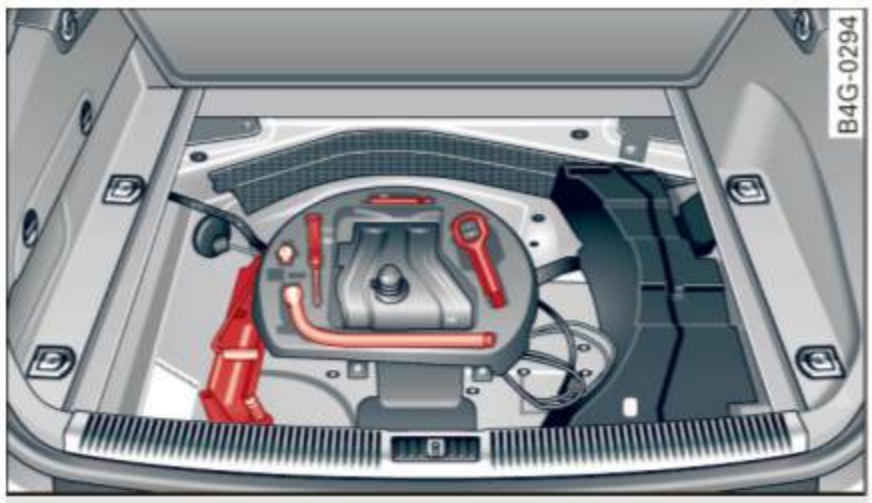


Fig. 202 Trunk lid: Vehicle tool kit

- ▸ Fold the floor to the seatback with the help of the handle.
- ▸ Turn the handwheel counter-clockwise ⇨ *fig. 201* and remove the spare tire to reach the vehicle tool kit.

The onboard tool kit includes:

– Hooks to remove the wheel covers*
– Plastic hook to remove wheel bolt covers*
– Wheel bolt wrench
– Alignment pin for changing wheels
– Screwdriver with reversible blade
– Towing eye
– Jack

Before storing the jack, make sure it is wound back down as far as it will go.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

– Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
– The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
– Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
– Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.

– Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.

Tips

– Some of the onboard items listed above are provided on certain models only or are optional extras.
– Before you can raise your vehicle using the jack, you must activate the jacking mode ⇨ *page 257*.

Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

The spare tire/wheel is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover. It is intended for short-term use only.

Taking out the spare tire

▸ Fold the floor to the seatback with the help of the handle.
▸ Turn the large screw ⇨ *page 253, fig. 201* counter-clockwise.
▸ Take out the spare tire.
▸ Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 132*.

Using the spare tire (compact spare tire)

The compact spare tire is only intended for emergencies until you can reach a repair shop. Replace it as quickly as possible with a standard wheel and tire.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. It must not be swapped with a compact spare tire from another type of vehicle.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is **not permitted**.

If you do have to drive with snow chains and a *front tire* fails, mount the spare wheel with tire instead of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire and use it to replace the defective front tire.

WARNING

– Never use the spare tire if it is damaged or if it is worn down to the tread wear indicators.
– If the spare tire is more than 6 years old, use it only in an emergency and with extreme caution and careful driving.
– The spare tire is intended only for temporary and short-term use. It should be replaced as soon as possible with the normal wheel and tire.
– After mounting the compact spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible. The tire pressure of the compact spare tire must be 4.2 bar; otherwise, you risk having an accident.
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h). You risk having an accident.
– Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering. You risk having an accident.
– Never drive using more than one spare wheel and tire. You risk having an accident.
– Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.
– For technical reasons, the use of tire chains on the spare tire is not permitted. If it is necessary to drive with tire chains, the spare wheel must be mounted on the front axle in the event of a flat in a rear tire. The newly available front wheel must then be installed in place of the rear wheel with the flat tire. Installing the tire chain before mounting the wheel and tire is recommended.
– Loose items in the passenger compartment can cause serious personal injury during hard braking or in an accident. Never store the inflatable spare tire or jack and tools in the passenger compartment.

Replacing wheels

Before changing a wheel

Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.

- After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇨ ⚠.
- All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇨ ⚠.
- Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇨ ⚠.
- Move **selector lever to position P** ⇨ ⚠.
- If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- Take the **jack** and the **spare tire** out of the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 253*, ⇨ *page 254*.

⚠ WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:

– If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.

– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.

– To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in P (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.

– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.

– Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 132*.

Tips

Before changing the wheel, you must activate the jacking mode, so that the automatic controls for the Adaptive Air Suspension* do not make it more difficult to lift the vehicle with the jack ⇨ *page 257*.

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.

1. Activate the vehicle jack mode* ⇨ *page 257*.
2. Remove the **decorative wheel cover***. For more details see also ⇨ *page 256, Decorative wheel covers* or ⇨ *page 256, Wheels with wheel bolt caps*.
3. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇨ *page 256*.
4. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇨ *page 257*.
5. **Raise** the car with the jack ⇨ *page 257*.
6. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install **the spare** ⇨ *page 259*.
7. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
8. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
9. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts ⇨ *page 256*.
10. Replace the decorative **wheel cover***.
11. Deactivate the vehicle jack mode* in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **Off**.

The vehicle jack mode* switches off automatically at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h).

⚠ WARNING

Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇨ ⚠ *in Raising the vehicle on page 258* and ⇨ *page 260*.

After changing a wheel

A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.

- ▸ Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 132*.
- ▸ Check the **tire pressure** on the spare wheel immediately after mounting it.
- ▸ As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 90 ft lb (120 Nm).
- ▸ Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

Tips

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.
– After changing a wheel, the tire pressure in all four tires must be checked/corrected and the tire pressure monitoring indicator must be stored in the MMI ⇨ *page 252*.

Decorative wheel covers

Applies to vehicles: with decorative wheel covers

The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.

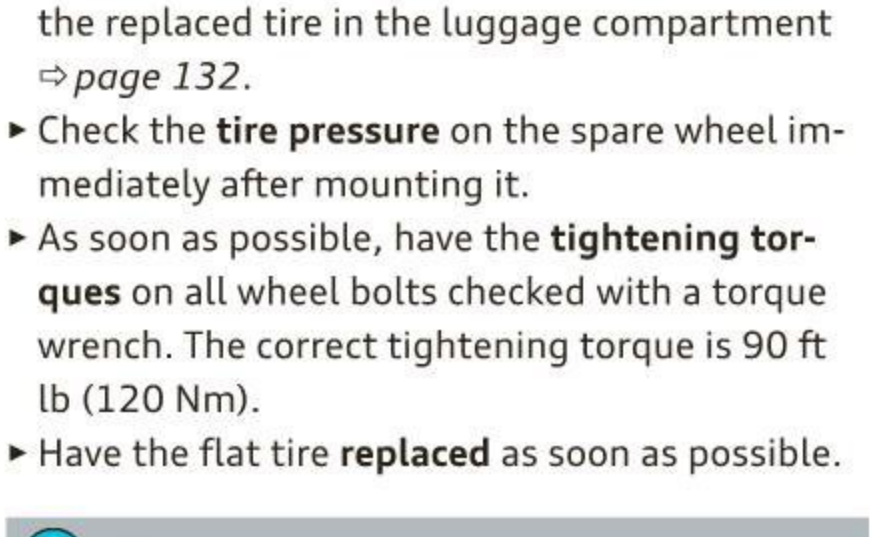


Fig. 203 Changing a wheel: Removing the wheel cover

Removing

- ▸ Insert the **hook** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) in the hole in the wheel hub cover.
- ▸ Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇨ *fig. 203*.

Wheels with wheel bolt caps

Applies to vehicles: with wheel bolts with caps

The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.



Fig. 204 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

Removing

- ▸ Push the **plastic clip** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) over the wheel bolt cap until the inner retainers on the clip align with the edge of the cover.
- ▸ Remove the cap with the **plastic clip** (vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 204*.

Refitting

- ▸ Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back on.

The caps are to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean.

Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.



Fig. 205 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts ▶

Loosening

- ▸ Slide the **wheel wrench** onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇨ *fig. 205*.

Tightening

- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

WARNING

– Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.
– *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - You risk an injury.

Tips

– Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
– If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the car to keep your balance and take care not to slip.

Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

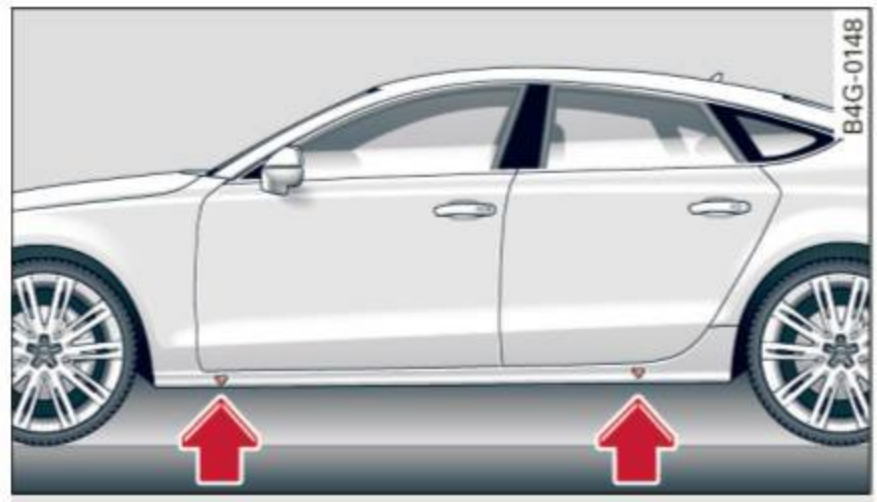


Fig. 206 Sill panels: markings

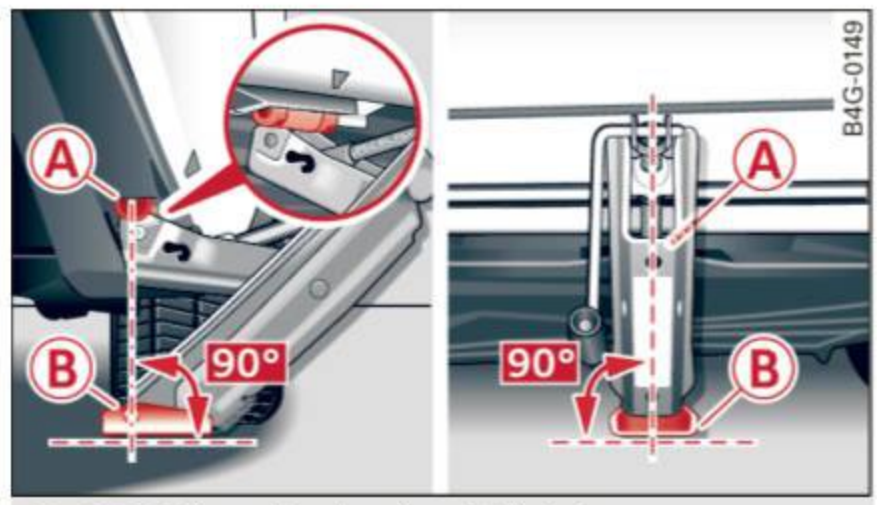


Fig. 207 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- ▸ Activate the vehicle jack mode* in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **On**.
- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally.
- ▸ Move the **selector lever to position P**.
- ▸ Find the **marking** (imprint) on the sill that is nearest the wheel that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 206*. Behind the marking, there is a **lifting point** on the sill for the vehicle jack.
- ▸ Vehicles with a sill: remove the cover from the sill before lifting the vehicle with a vehicle jack ⇨ *page 258*.
- ▸ Turn the **vehicle jack** located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 207* is located under the designated plastic mount ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ Ⓘ.
- ▸ Align the jack so that its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 207* engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the movable base Ⓑ lies flat on the ground. The base Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ. ▶

▸ Wind the jack up further until the flat tire comes off the ground ⇨ ⚠.

Position the vehicle jack **only** under the designated lifting points on the sill ⇨ *fig. 206*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ ⓘ.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  – Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
  – A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  – On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
– To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
  – Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.
– Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.

ⓘ Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points on the sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

ⓘ Tips

The vehicle jack mode* switches off automatically at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h).

Removing and installing the sill extension cover

Applies to vehicles: with sill extension



Fig. 208 Sill: removing the cover

▸ Pull the cover down to remove it. ⇨ *fig. 208*
▸ To install the cover, insert it in the mount and press it upward until it clicks into place. The cover must be flush with the surface of the sill extension.

ⓘ Tips

Some models may also have a cover for the rear vehicle lift point.

Taking the wheel off/installing the spare

Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel.



Fig. 209 Changing a wheel: using the screwdriver handle (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts



Fig. 210 Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows:

Removing the wheel

- Use the **hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle** to completely remove the topmost wheel bolt and set it aside on a *clean* surface ⇨ *fig. 209*.
- Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 210*.
- Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole ⇨ (!).

Putting on the spare wheel

- Lift the spare wheel and carefully slide it over the alignment pin to guide it in place ⇨ (!).
- Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to screw in and tighten all wheel bolts *slightly*.
- Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.
- Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇨ *page 256*. Tighten them *crosswise*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.

(!) Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

(i) Tips

Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

– Pull the reversible blade from the screwdriver before you use the hexagonal socket in the handle to turn the wheel bolts.

– When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 259*.

– The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.

Tires with unidirectional tread design

Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.

Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

– The direction of rotation is marked by an arrow on the side of the tire. ▶

– If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
– We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
– Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire.

– Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
– In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
– Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 240, New tires or wheels* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

– **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after installation.**
– **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.**
– **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 90 ft lb (120 Nm).**
– **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**
– **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

– If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 240, New tires or wheels*.

Fuses

Replacing fuses

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.

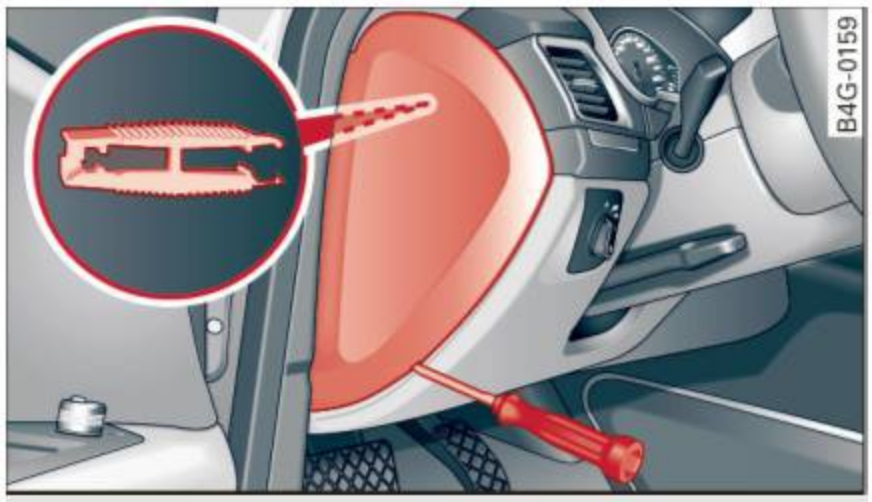


Fig. 211 Driver's side of the cockpit: cover

The fuses are located on front left and right of the cockpit and behind the trim on the right side of the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment.
- ▸ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▸ Remove the colored plastic clip from the fuse panel, if necessary ⇨ *page 262, fig. 212*. You can dispose of the plastic clip.
- ▸ Remove the clamp from the rear side of the cover ⇨ *fig. 211*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the clamp.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse only with an identical new one.
- ▸ Install the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
green	30
orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

- – The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
- – Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Driver side cockpit fuse assignment

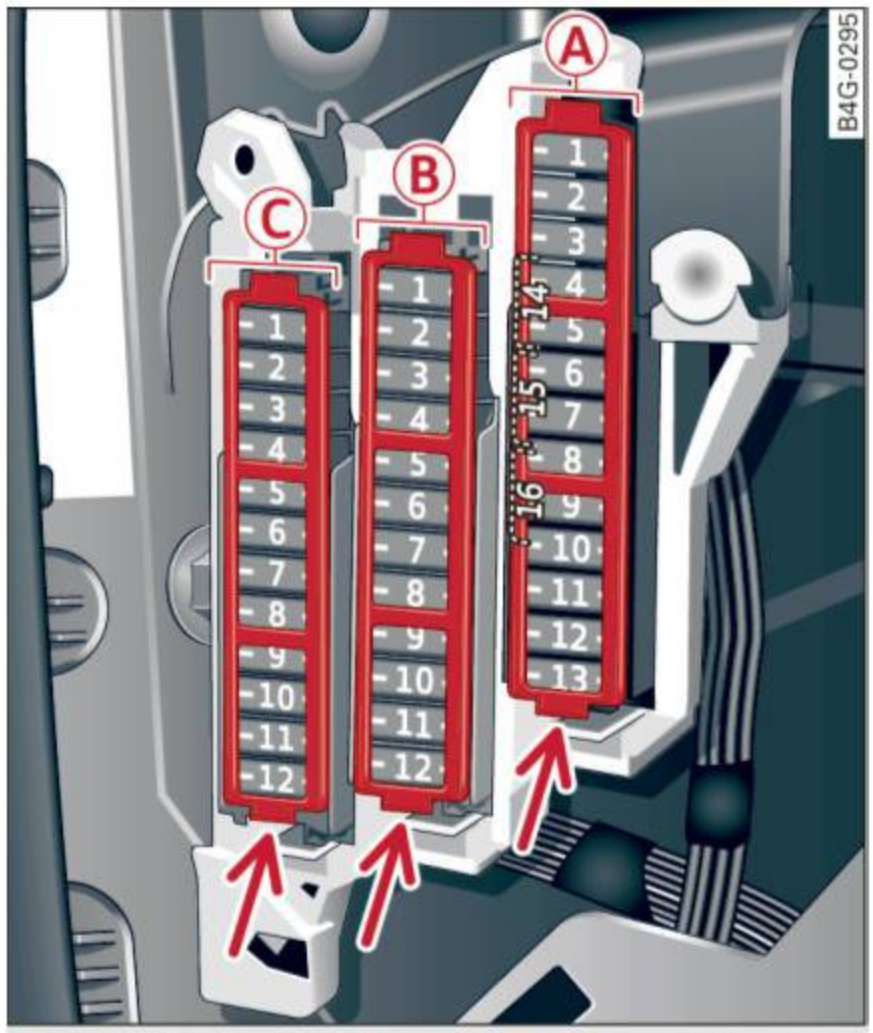


Fig. 212 Driver's side of the cockpit: fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Electromechanical power steering, trailer hitch, ionizer, switch strip, seat heating (rear), electromechanical parking brake
2	Horn, climate control system, Gateway, automatic dimming interior rearview mirror
4	Parking aid, headlight range adjustment
5	Dynamic steering, Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
6	Headlights
7	Adaptive cruise control
8	Front passenger's seat sensors, airbag
9	Gateway
10	Engine sound, night vision assist, garage door opener (HomeLink), parking aid
11	Video camera image processing
12	Headlights
13	Steering column switch module
14	Terminal 15 (luggage compartment)

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
15	Terminal 15 (engine compartment)
16	Starter

Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Infotainment
2	Infotainment
3	Front passenger's seat
5	Airbag, Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
6	Anti-theft alarm system
7	Electromechanical parking brake
8	Interior lights
9	Windshield video camera heating, light/ rain sensor
10	Lumbar support (driver's seat)
11	Driver's seat
12	Electronic stabilization control
13	Horn
14	Headlights
15	Front seat heating
16	Dynamic steering

Fuse panel Ⓒ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Clutch pedal
2	Fuel pump
3	Brake light sensor
4	AdBlue (diesel engine)/engine acoustics
5	Rear door
6	Front door
7	Electronic stabilization control
8	Windshield wiper motor
9	Headlight washer system
10	Interior lighting, climate control system
11	Headlights
12	Sunroof

Front passenger side cockpit fuse assignment

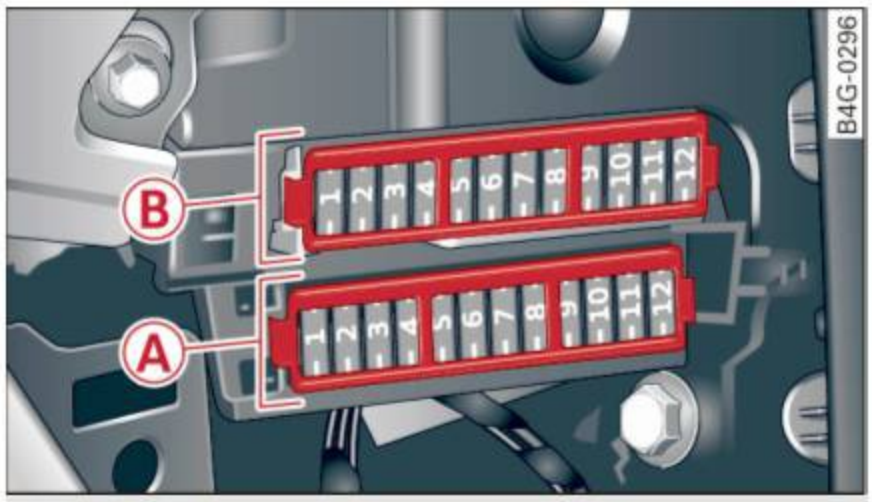


Fig. 213 Front passenger's side of the cockpit fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel Ⓐ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Infotainment, CD changer
2	Infotainment (display)

Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Climate control system
2	Climate control system (blower)
3	Diagnostic interface
4	Electrical ignition lock
5	Electronic steering column lock
6	Steering column switch module
7	Power steering column adjustment
8	Light switch
9	Head-up display
10	Instrument cluster
11	Infotainment, DVD changer

Luggage compartment fuse assignment



Fig. 214 Luggage compartment: fuse panel with plastic clip

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Trailer hitch/220 volt socket
2	Trailer hitch/climatized cup holder
3	Trailer hitch/adjusting front passenger's seat from the rear
4	Electromechanical parking brake
5	Electromechanical parking brake
6	Front door (front passenger's side)
7	Rear exterior lighting
8	Central locking, closing aid
9	Seat heating (front)
11	Seat heating (rear), climate control system
12	Trailer hitch

Fuse panel Ⓑ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Left safety belt tensioner
2	Right safety belt tensioner
3	AdBlue tank (diesel engine)/fuel pump
4	AdBlue tank (diesel engine)/engine mount (gasoline engine)
5	Sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid
6	Air suspension, adaptive dampers
7	Rear door (front passenger's side)
8	Tail lights
9	Luggage compartment lid

▶

Fuse panel Ⓑ (red)	
10	Rear seat entertainment
12	Rear spoiler (Sportback), tilt/open sunroof, Panorama glass roof

Fuse panel Ⓒ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Infotainment
2	Infotainment
3	Infotainment, automatic dimming interior rearview mirror
5	TV tuner
6	Tank leak detection system
7	Sockets
8	Parking heater
10	Lumbar support (front passenger's seat)
12	Infotainment

Fuse panel Ⓓ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Air suspension, adaptive dampers, sport differential, electromechanical parking brake
2	Clutch pedal position sensor/automatic transmission
3	Seats
4	Rear wiper (Avant)
5	Side assist
6	Engine sound
7	Infotainment/sound amplifier
8	Gateway
9	Sport differential
10	Climate control system
11	Tire pressure monitoring system/parking heater
12	Start-Stop-System

Fuse panel Ⓔ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Special purpose vehicles/rear seats

Fuse panel Ⓕ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Rear window defogger

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

Starting with jumper cables

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large **cross section** to carry the starter current safely. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *insulated* terminal clamps which are distinctly marked:

plus (+) cable in most cases colored **red**

minus (-) cable in most cases colored **black**.

WARNING

Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.

- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
- A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures just below 32 °F (0 °C). Before connecting a jumper cable, you must thaw the frozen battery completely, otherwise it could explode.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.
- Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
- Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
- Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.
- The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
- Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.
- Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.
- Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.
- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 218*.

Note

- Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
- There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected.

Tips

The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. ▶

When jump starting or charging the battery, never connect the negative ground cable to the battery negative post because the battery manager system must be able to detect the battery's state of charge. Always connect the negative ground cable to the negative ground post of the battery manager control unit.

Use of jumper cables

Make sure to connect the jumper cable clamps in exactly the order described below!

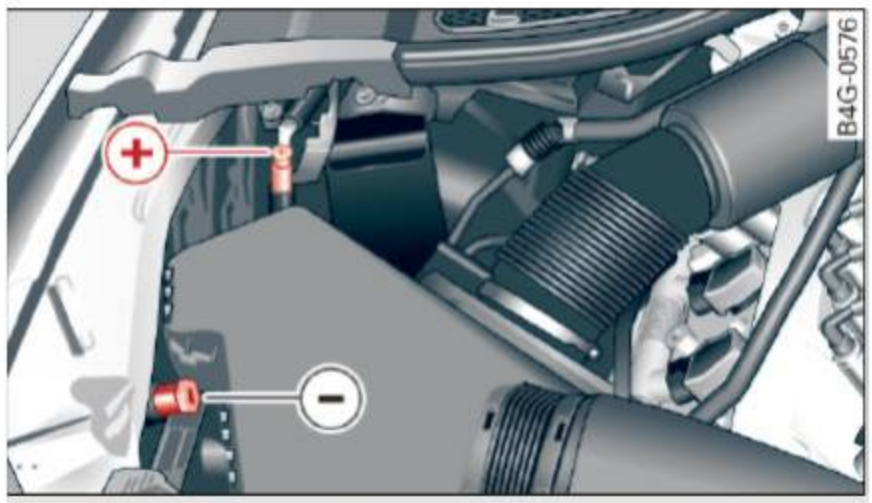


Fig. 215 Engine compartment: connectors for jump start cables and charger

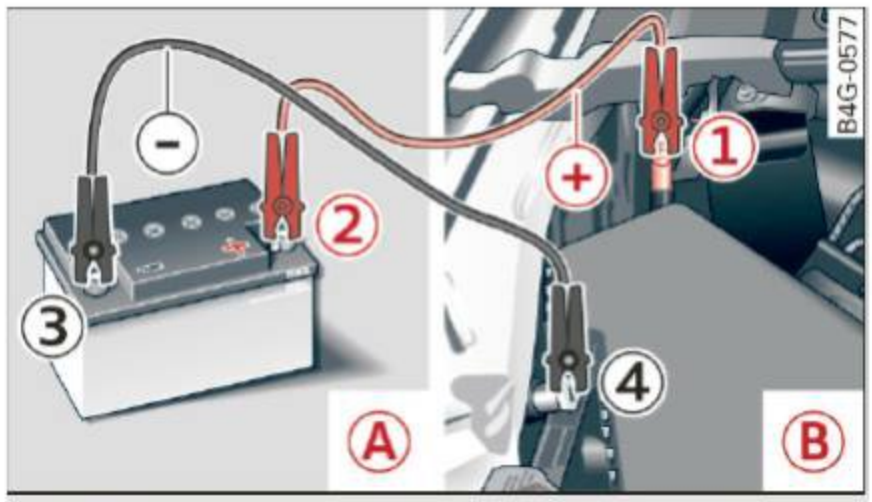


Fig. 216 Jump starting with the battery of another vehicle: Ⓐ – booster battery, Ⓑ – discharged vehicle battery

The procedure described below for connecting jumper cables is intended to provide a jump start for your vehicle.

Vehicle with discharged battery:

- ▸ Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to N (Neutral) or P (Park) and set parking brake.

Connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) (red)

- ▸ Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 215*.

1. Connect one end of the red positive cable on the **jump start bolt** ⇨ *fig. 216* ① (bolt under the red cover = "positive") of the vehicle to be started Ⓑ.
2. Connect the other end to the positive terminal ② of the booster battery Ⓐ.

Connect NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) (black)

3. Connect one end of the black negative cable to the negative terminal ③ of the booster battery Ⓐ.
4. Connect the other end to the **jump start pin** ④ (bolts with hex head bolt = "negative") of the vehicle to be started Ⓑ.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery Ⓐ. Run the engine at a moderate speed.
- ▸ Start engine with discharged vehicle battery Ⓑ in the usual manner.
- ▸ If the engine fails to start, do not keep the starter cranking for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and then try again.
- ▸ With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact *reverse* order.
- ▸ Close the red cover on the positive terminal.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior. Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their metal parts in full contact with the battery terminals.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

– Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.
– When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 218*.

Note

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

– Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) ground post of the battery manager control unit.
– Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
– Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the negative **(–)** cable to the negative **(–)** terminal on the discharged battery ④ ⇨ *fig. 216*. Instead, securely connect the negative **(–)** cable to either a solid metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself. If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode!

Towing with a tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

– **Never tow your Audi. Towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
– **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
– **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flat bed truck.**
– **To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 267* and ⇨ *page 268*.

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

Front towing loop

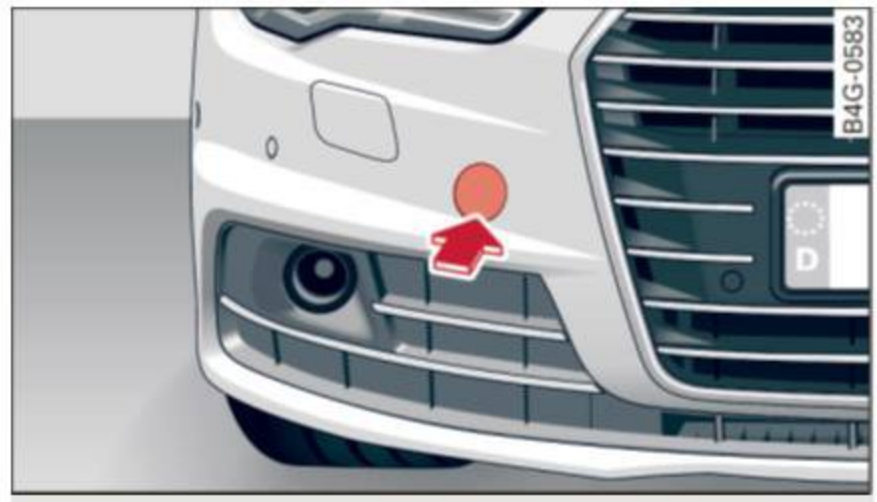


Fig. 217 Front bumper: cover

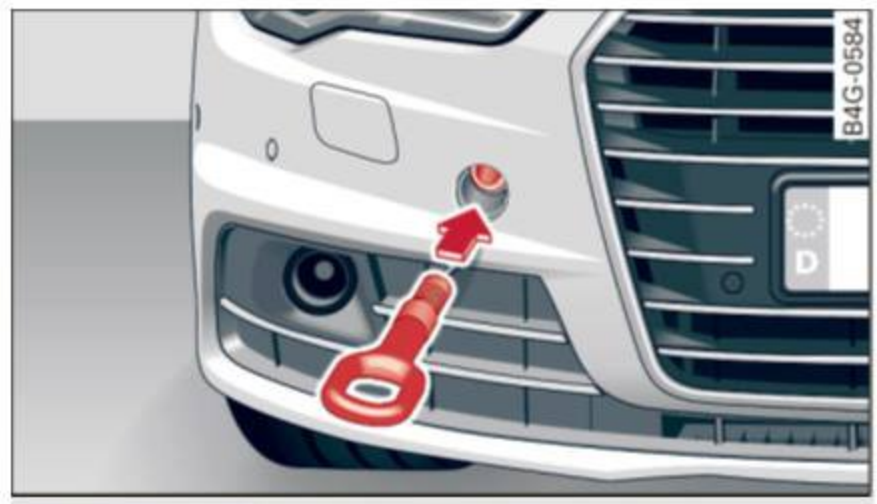


Fig. 218 Front bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located behind a cover on the right side of the front bumper.

▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 253*.
▸ Press the lower area of the cap inward with quick, strong pressure ⇨ *fig. 217*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 218* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be ▶

pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Rear towing loop

Only install the rear towing loop when it is needed.



Fig. 219 Rear bumper: cover



Fig. 220 Rear bumper: screwing in towing loop

There are threads located behind the right side of the rear bumper where a towing loop can be installed. The threads are located behind a cover.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit.
- ▸ Press inward strongly to the button side of the cap to remove it from the bumper ⇨ *fig. 219*.
- ▸ Screw the towing loop tightly in the threaded hole as far as it will go and tighten it with the wheel wrench ⇨ *fig. 220*.

Remove the towing loop when you are done using it and place it back in the vehicle tool kit. Always keep the towing loop in the vehicle.

WARNING

If you do not screw the towing loop completely, it could come out of the threaded hole while the vehicle is being towed causing damage to the vehicle and possible serious personal injury.

Loading the vehicle onto a flat bed truck

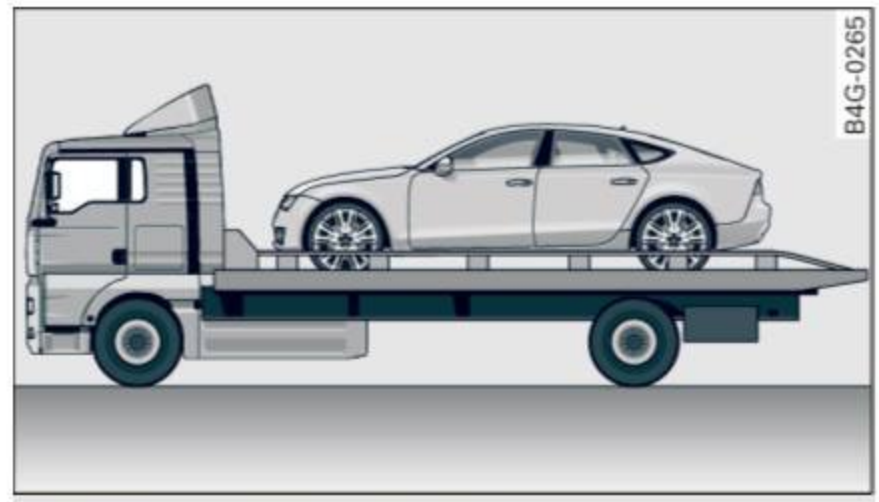


Fig. 221 Vehicle on flat bed truck

Front hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

Rear hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp.

Vehicle transport

Whenever you have your vehicle transported, be sure to note the following:

Note

Mount the tie-down chains/cables over the running surface (circumference) of the tires. Never secure the vehicle by the axle, the suspension struts or the front or rear towline eye. For technical reasons, the pressure in the suspension struts may change during the transport and this will adversely affect vehicle handling.

Raising the vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.

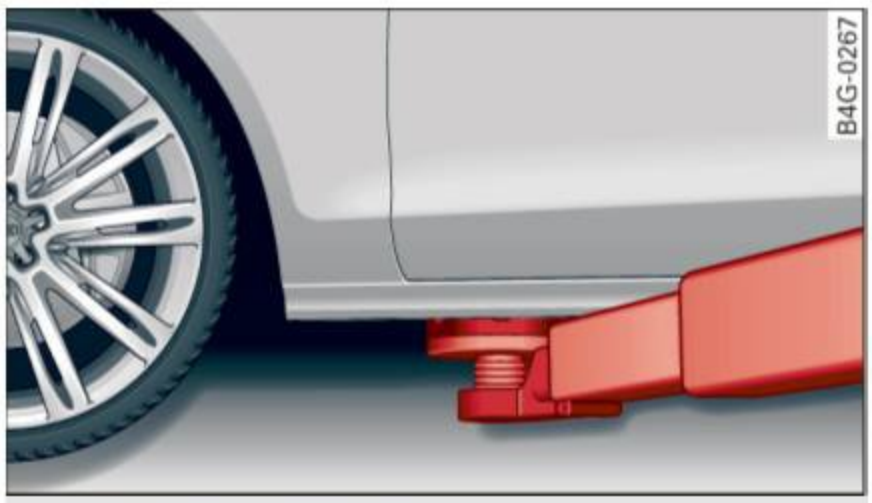


Fig. 222 Front lifting point

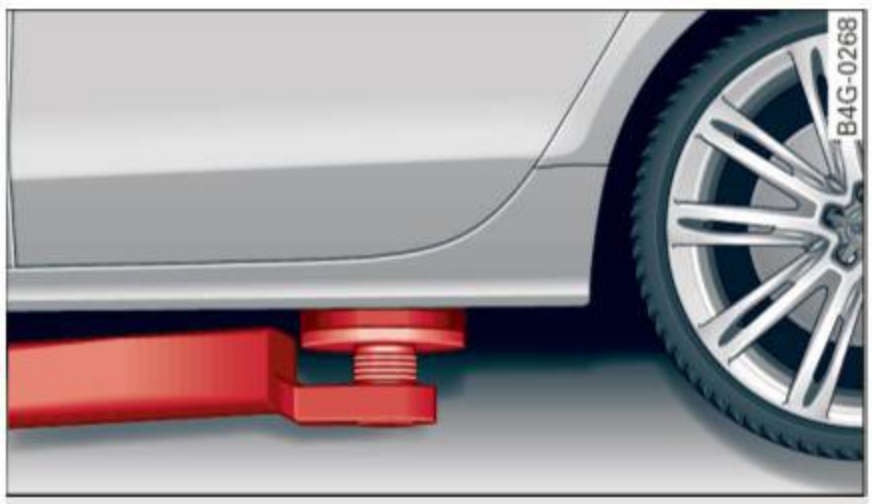


Fig. 223 Rear lifting point

- ▸ Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Activate the vehicle jack mode* in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **On**.
- ▸ Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 222* and ⇨ *fig. 223*.
- ▸ Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- ▸ Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

The vehicle jack mode* must be activated so that the automatic adjustment of the Adaptive Air Suspension* does not make it more difficult to raise the vehicle with the floor jack.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 222*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the on-board jack ⇨ *fig. 223*.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 257*.

⚠ WARNING

- To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  - Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 222* and ⇨ *fig. 223*.
  - Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.
- When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

Note

- Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  - **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  - **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**

▸

- Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.
- Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.

Technical data

Vehicle identification



Fig. 224 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) plate: location on driver's side dash panel

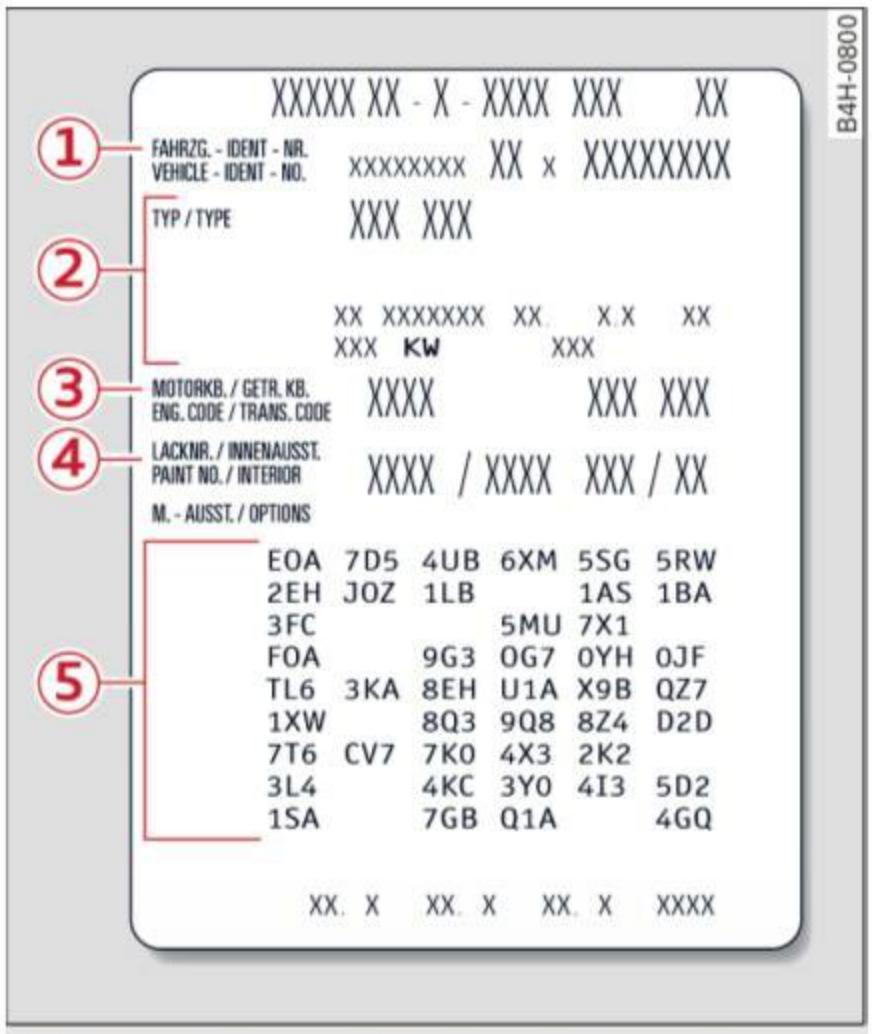


Fig. 225 The vehicle identification label – inside the luggage compartment

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The Vehicle Identification Number is located in different places:

– under the windshield on the driver's side ⇨ *fig. 224*.
– in the MMI: Select: Function button CAR > **(Car)* systems** > **Servicing & checks** > **VIN number**.
– on the vehicle identification label.

Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label is located in the luggage compartment in the spare wheel well.

The label ⇨ *fig. 225* shows the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission code
④ Paint number and interior
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

The information of the vehicle identification label can also be found in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side. It shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

High voltage warning label

The high voltage warning label is located in the engine compartment next to the engine hood release. The spark ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

Weights

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which includes passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Gross Axle Weight Rating

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

Vehicle capacity weight

The vehicle capacity weight (max. load) is listed either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap.

⚠ WARNING

– The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

– Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.

Note

– The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
– Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.
– Always observe local regulations.

Dimensions

		A7	S7
Length	in (mm)	196.2 (4984)	196.3 (4985)
Width	in (mm)	75.2 (1911)	75.2 (1911)
Width (across mirrors)	in (mm)	84.2 (2139)	84.2 (2139)
Height (unloaded)[a)]	in (mm)	55.9 (1420)	55.0 (1398)

a) The height of the vehicle depends on the tires and the suspension.

When driving up steep ramps, on rough roads, over curbs, etc. it is important to remember that some parts of your vehicle, such as spoilers or exhaust system components, may be close to the ground. Be careful not to damage them.

Capacities

Fuel tank: total capacity - gasoline engine - diesel engine	 gal (liters) gal (liters)	 approx. 19.8 (75.0) approx. 19.3 (73.0)
Windshield fluid container	quarts (liters)	approx. 3.7 (3.5)
Windshield and headlight washer fluid container*	quarts (liters)	approx. 5.2 (4.9)

Gasoline engines

A7 3.0, 6 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	333 @ 5300 - 6500
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	325 @ 2900 - 5300
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	182 (2995)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)**, ⇨ *page 210, Gasoline*	

S7 4.0, 8 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	450 @ 5800 - 6400
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	406 @ 1400 - 5700
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	243.7 (3993)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)**, ⇨ *page 210, Gasoline*	

Diesel engines

A7 3.0 TDI, 6 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	239 @ 3500 - 3750
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	428 @ 1750 - 2250
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	181 (2967)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**ULSD No. 2**, ⇨ *page 211, Diesel fuel*	

[1)] For specific engine oil capacities, please see the most current information for the USA at http://www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance or for Canada at http://www.audi.ca/ca/brand/ en/your_audi/audi_services_and/Care_and_Maintenance/schedule.html or call 800-822-2834.

162.561.4GA.23

Consumer information

Warranty coverages

Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:

– *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
– *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
– *Emissions Control System Warranty*
– *Emissions Performance Warranty*
– *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
– *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**.

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

– unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
– fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
– service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
– replacement parts may not be readily available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside North America.

Note

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals and Literature are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service manuals and literature are available to order from the Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.audi.techliterature.com

Maintenance

General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, when towing a trailer very frequently, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

– oil changes, and
– cleaning or replacing the air filter.

For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.

Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of ▶

today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ **and** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 218.*

⚠ WARNING

- Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.
- Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.
- Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.
- Always switch off the ignition before anyone gets under the vehicle.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.
- Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in P (Park position) and the park brake is applied.

▶

For the sake of the environment

– Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
– Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
– Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Accessories and technical changes

Additional accessories and parts replacement

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

WARNING

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.
– Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts
– These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.
– Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!
– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 218*.

Note

– If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle's engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
– If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
– The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations.

Technical Modifications

Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇨ ⚠.

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This ▶

means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇨ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

WARNING

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

Note

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunication and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Devices

The following devices each comply with FCC Part 15.19, FCC 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

– Adaptive cruise control*
– Audi side assist*
– Cell phone package*
– Convenience key*
– Electronic immobilizer
– Garage door opener (HomeLink)*
– Remote control key

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen Issue 1

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

162.561.4GA.23

A

A/C (four-zone automatic climate control) . . 71
A/C (three-zone climate control) 69
Accessories 59, 276
Active lane assist 94
  Adjusting the vibration warning 96
  Cleaning the camera area 206
  Driver messages 95
  Indicator light 95
  switching on and off 95
Adaptive air suspension/sport 101
Adaptive cruise control 85
  Cleaning the sensor 206
  Messages 92
  Request for driver intervention 90
  Stop-and-go traffic 89
Adaptive Light (defective) 22
AdBlue 214
  Messages 215
  Opening the tank door 215
  Refilling 215
Adding
  Engine coolant 225
  Engine oil 222
  Windshield washer fluid 231
Additives
  Engine oil 222
Adjusting
  Front seats 53
  Steering column electrically 74
  Steering column manually 74
Adjusting air distribution (four-zone automatic climate control) 72
Adjusting air distribution (three-zone climate control) 69
Adjusting the temperature (four-zone automatic climate control) 71
Adjusting the temperature (three-zone climate control) 69
advanced key
  refer to Convenience key 75
Airbag 143
Airbag system 163
  Advanced Airbag-System 147
  Advanced Airbag System components . . . 150
  Care 158
  Children 169
  Child restraints 169
  Components (front airbags) 150
  Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 144
  Disposal 158
  Front airbags 147, 148
  How do the front airbags work? 152
  How many airbags does my vehicle have? 150
  How the Advanced Airbag System components work together 152
  Important information 143
  Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system 161
  Knee airbags 159
  Monitoring 154
  PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 155
  Repairs 158
  Safety instructions 157
  Side airbags 161
  Side curtain airbags 164
  Warning/indicator lights 18
  Warning/Indicator lights 154
  When must the system be inspected? . . . 154
Aircraft
  Transporting your vehicle 268
All season tires 248
All weather lights 43
All wheel drive 192
Alternator 16
Ambient lighting 46
Anti-freeze
  refer to Engine coolant 224
Anti-lock braking system
  Indicator light 18
  Warning/indicator lights 19
Anti-Lock Braking System 188
Anti-slip regulation
  Indicator light 18
Anti-Slip Regulation 188
Anti-theft systems
  Electronic immobilizer 31
Ashtray 58
Audi drive select
  refer to Drive select 101
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 274

AUTO
Automatic headlights 43
Four-zone automatic climate control 71
Three-zone climate control 69
Auto Lock 32
Automatic belt retractor 138
Automatic post-collision braking system . . 189
Automatic transmission 107
Driving 109
Emergency mode 112
Hill descent control 110
Kick-down 111
Manual shift program 111
Selector lever 107
Selector lever emergency release 113
Automatic wipe/wash system 49
Auto Safety Hotline 133
Auxiliary heater (four-zone automatic climate control) 73
Auxiliary heater (three-zone climate control) 70
Average consumption 24
Average speed 24
Avoid damaging the vehicle 196

B

Battery 228
Charge level 194
Charging 230
Energy management 194
Important warnings 228
Jump starting 265
Location 228
Replacing the battery 231
Winter operation 228
Working on the battery 228
Before driving 126
Belt tensioners 141
Blended gasoline 210
Blower (four-zone automatic climate control) 72
Blower (three-zone climate control) 69
Booster seats 176
Brake fluid
Changing the brake fluid 227
Checking the brake fluid level 227
Brakes
Indicator light 21
Brake system
Anti-lock braking system 19
Brake booster 191
Brake fluid 227
Brake fluid specifications for refill and replacement 227
Brake power assist unit 190
Brakes 190
Electromechanical parking brake 78
Fluid reservoir 227
Warning/indicator lights 14
Worn brake pads symbol 19
Braking
Brake assist 188
Emergency braking function 79
Braking guard 85
Messages 92
Settings 92
Break-in period
Brake pads 190
Tires 196
Breaking in 196
New tires 240

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 219
Battery specific 229
Capacities 272
AdBlue 214
Engine oil 220
Car carrier
Transporting your vehicle 268
Care 205
Cargo area 132
Cargo net 65
Catalytic converter 197
Center armrest
Cockpit 55
Central locking 31
Emergency locking 36
Power windows 40
Setting 33
Sunroof 40
Certification 277
Changing engine oil 223

162.561.4GA.23

Checking
Engine coolant level 224
Child restraints
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 144
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 184
Child restraint system anchors 180
Child safety 167
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats 170
Important things to know when driving with children 167
Tether anchors 183
Tether straps 183
Child safety lock
Rear doors, windows in the rear 39
Child safety seats
Booster seats 176
Convertible child seats 174
Convertible locking retractor 179
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? 170
Infant seats 173
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system 182
LATCH system 182
Lower anchorages 181
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 182
Safety instructions 170
Unused safety belts on the rear seat 172
Child seats 173
Securing 177
Cigarette lighter 58
Cleaning 205
Cleaning/removing ice from windows 207
Cleaning Alcantara 208
Cleaning artificial leather 208
Cleaning carbon parts 207, 208
Cleaning controls 207
Cleaning decorative parts and trim . . . 206, 207
Cleaning displays 207
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 206
Cleaning plastic parts 207
Cleaning rims 206
Cleaning textiles 208
Climate control system 68
Closing
Sunroof 40
Windows 39
Coming home 45
Compact spare tire 254
Compartments 59
Compliance 277
Consumer information 274
Consumer Information 133
Consumption (fuel) 24
Contacting NHTSA 133
Convenience key 34
Starting the engine (START ENGINE STOP button) 75
Stopping the engine (START ENGINE STOP button) 76
Switching the ignition on 75
Unlocking and locking vehicle 34
Convenience opening 40
Convertible child safety seats 174
Convertible locking retractor
Activating 179
Deactivating 180
Using to secure a child safety seat 179
Coolant
refer to Engine coolant 224
Cooling mode (four-zone automatic climate control) 71
Cooling mode (three-zone climate control) . 69
Crossing water 196
Cruise control
Switching off 84
Warning/indicator lights 22
Cruise control system
Changing speed 83
Preselecting speed 84
switching on 83
Cupholder 59
Curve light 101
Cylinder management
refer to Cylinder on demand System 24
Cylinder on demand System 24

D

Data recorder 187

Date display 26
Daytime running lights 43
Declaration of compliance
Adaptive cruise control 277
Audi side assist 277
Cell phone package 277
Convenience key 277
Electronic immobilizer 277
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 277
Remote control key 277
Defective light bulb warning
Indicator light 21
Defrosting (windows)
Four-zone automatic climate control 72
Three-zone climate control 69
DEF (instrument cluster) 26
Determining correct load limit 247
Diesel
Indicator light 20
Prewarming 75
Diesel fuel 211
Diesel particulate filter 198
Dimensions 272
Dimming the rearview mirror 48
Distance 24
Door/rear lid warning 23
Doors
Child safety lock 39
Driver information system 23
CD/radio display 23
Door/rear lid warning 23
Efficiency program 25
Exterior temperature display 23
On-board computer 24
Service interval display 26
Driver seating position 127
drive select
adaptive air suspension/sport 101
Adaptive dampers 101
Curve light 101
Engine sound 101
Safety belt tensioner 101
Sport differential 101
Drive select 101
Driving economically 198
Driving safely 126
Driving through water 196
Driving time 24
Duplicate key 30
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter 68
Dynamic steering
Indicator light 192

E

Easy seat entry 75
Economy tips (efficiency program) 25
Efficiency program 25
Electromechanical parking brake
Operation 78
Releasing and closing 78
Warning/indicator lights 15
Electromechanical steering 192
Indicator light 192
Electronic differential lock
Indicator light 18
Electronic Differential Lock 188
Electronic differential lock (EDL)
Warning/indicator lights 19
Electronic immobilizer 31
Electronic power control (EPC)
warning/indicator light 20
Electronic speed limiter 29
Electronic stabilization control
Indicator light 18
Electronic Stabilization Control 188
Sport mode 189
Emergency actuation
Doors 36
Emergency flasher 46
Warning/indicator lights 22
Emergency operation
Emergency braking function (parking brake) .79
Fuel filler door 214
Luggage compartment lid 38
Selector lever 113
Sunroof 41
Emergency starting 265
Energy management 194
Engine
Compartment 220
Coolant 224
Prewarming 75

162.561.4GA.23

Starting 75
Starting with jumper cables 265
Stopping 76
Engine compartment 220
Closing the hood 219
Opening the hood 218
Safety instructions 218
Working in the engine compartment 218
Engine coolant 224
Adding coolant 225
Checking the engine coolant level 224
Expansion tank 224
Malfunction symbol 15
Radiator fan 226
Temperature gauge 10
Engine oil 220
Adding 222
Additives 222
Changing 223
Checking oil level 222
Consumption 222
Indicator light 17
Oil consumption 221
Pressure malfunction 16
Sensor defective 21
Specification and viscosity 220
Engine sound 101
Engine speed limitation (indicator light) . . . 21
Engine Start-Stop mode
refer to Start-Stop-System 82
Engine warm-up request
Indicator light 21
Environment
Catalytic converter 197
Diesel particulate filter 198
Disposing of your vehicle battery 231
Driving at high speeds 198
Fuel 212
Leaks under your vehicle 218
Letting the vehicle stand and warm up . . . 199
Proper disposal of drained brake fluid . . . 227
Proper disposal of drained engine coolant 225
Proper disposal of drained engine oil 222, 223
Recycling used engine oil 222
Unleaded fuel 210
What should I do with an old battery? . . . 231
ESC
Automatic post-collision braking system . 189
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 187
Expansion tank 224
Exterior lighting 43
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting 47
Dimming 48
Heating 47
Exterior temperature display 23

F

Fastening
Booster seats 176
Convertible child safety seats 174
Infant seats 173
Floor mats 131
Foot pedals 131
For the sake of the environment
Environmentally-friendly driving 198
Gasoline fumes and the environment 212
Reducing engine noise by early upshifting . 10
Refueling 212
Saving fuel by early upshifting 10
Warming up the engine 75
Four-zone automatic climate control
Air vents 72
Auxiliary heater 73
Basic settings 73
Operating 71
Recirculation mode 73
Residual heat 72
Synchronizing 72
Front airbags
Description 147
How they work 152
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics . . 136
Front seats 53
Adjusting 128
Child restraints in the front seat 144
Fuel
Additives 210
Blended gasoline 210
Current consumption 24
Fuel filler neck 212
Fuel gauge 10, 11
Gasoline 210
Gasoline additives 211
Indicator light 21

Octane rating 210
Recommendation 210
Refuelling 212
Saving fuel 198
Tank capacity 272
Fueling
Fuel filler door emergency release 214
Fuel gauge 11
Fuses
Assignment 262
Replacing 261

G

Garage door opener (HomeLink) 41
Garment hooks 60
Gauges
Engine coolant temperature 10
General illustration 8
Generator (warning/indicator lights) 16
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 235
Glove compartment (cooled) 60
Glow plug system
Indicator light 20
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 271

H

Head-up display 27
Headlight
Assistt 44
Headlight range control system 43
Headlights
Cleaning 206
Headlight range control 22
Headlight range control system 43
Washer reservoir 231
Washer system 49
Head restraints 129
Adjusting 129
Front seats 55
Rear seats 56
Removing 56
Heated
Exterior mirrors 47
Rear window (four-zone automatic climate control) 72
Rear window (three-zone climate control) . 70
Seats (four-zone automatic climate control) .72
Seats(three-zone climate control) 70
Washer nozzles 49
Heating 68
Heavy clothing and safety belts 137
High beam 44
High voltage warning label 271
Hill descent control 110
HomeLink (garage door opener) 41
Hood (release lever) 218
Hooks 65
Horn 8
How are child restraint system anchors related to child safety 180
How many airbags does my vehicle have? . . 150
How safety belt pretensioners work 141

I

Ignition
Indicator light 17
Switching on/off 75
Imbalance (wheels) 241
Immobilizer 26
Important things to do before driving 126
Improperly worn safety belts 141
Indicator lights 11
also refer to Warning/indicator lights 11
Infant seats 173
Inflation pressure (tires) 243
Inspection interval 26
Installing child safety seats
Safety belts 177
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage 183
Instrument cluster 10
Indicator lights 11
Messages 11
Instruments 10
Adjusting illumination 47
Instruments and controls
General illustration 8
Interior lighting
Ambient lighting 46
Front and rear 46
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 49

J

Jack 253
Jump-starting 265
Jumper cables 266

K

Key 30
- Emergency key 30
- Indicator light 77
- Key not recognized 77
- Key replacement 30
- Master key 30
- Mechanical key 30
- Replacing the battery 31

Kick-down (automatic transmission) 111
Knee airbags 159
- Description 159
- How they work 160
- Important safety instructions 161

L

Lane assist
- *refer to* Active lane assist 94

LATCH 180
- Description 181
- Installing a child restraint 182
- Location 181
- Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 182

Launch control program 111
Leather care/cleaning 208
Leaving home 45
Lifting jack 257
Light
- Ambient lighting 46
- Coming/Leaving home 45
- Daytime running lights 43
- Emergency flashers 46
- Headlight assist 44
- High beam 44
- Interior/reading lights 46
- Low beams 43
- Parking lights 43
- Rear fog lights 43
- Turn signals 44

Light/rain sensor
- Headlights 43
- Indicator light 22
- Intermittent (windshield wipers) 49

Lighting
- Exterior 43
- Interior 46

Lights
- Headlight range control system 43

Loading the roof rack 62
Locking
- Power locking switch 35
- Remote control 33
- Using the key 35

Low beam
- Indicator light 21

Low beams 43
Lower universal anchorages (Canada) 180
Luggage compartment
- 12 Volt socket 59
- Cargo net 65
- Cover 63
- Enlarging 64
- Loading 63
- Reversible mat 65
- Ski sack 66
- Storing cargo correctly 132
- Stowing luggage 132
- Tie-downs 65
- Trunk pass-through 66

Luggage compartment lid
- Closing button 36
- Emergency release 38
- movement-activated opening 38
- Opening/closing 36

Lumbar support
- Front seats 54

M

Maintenance 274
Maintenance intervals 26
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 20, 28
Manual shift program 111
Massage function
- Front seats 54

Mechanical key 30

Memory function 56
Mirror
Vanity mirror 49
Mirrors
dimming 48
Exterior mirrors 47
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . 154
Multifunction steering wheel 24

N

Natural leather care/cleaning 208
NHTSA
Contacting 133
Night vision assist 104
Cleaning the camera 206
Nitrogen oxide (NOx) catalytic converter
refer to AdBlue 214
Number of seats 135

O

Occupant seating positions 127
Octane rating 210
Odometer 26
OFF (four-zone automatic climate control) . . 71
OFF (three-zone climate control) 69
Oil
refer to Engine oil 220
Oil change interval 26
On-board computer 24
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD)
Data Link Connector (DLC) 28
Electronic speed limiter 29
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 28
Open door/hood/rear lid warning 23
Opening 30
Hood 218
Luggage compartment lid 36
Sunroof 40
Windows 39
Other consumers (efficiency program) 25
Outlet 58
Owner's Literature 5

P

Paint damage 207
Paint No. 271
Parking
Automatic transmission 109
Parking aid
Cleaning sensors/camera 206
Parking brake 78
Emergency braking function 79
Parking 78
Starting from a stop 79
Starting to drive with a trailer 79
also refer to Electromechanical parking brake 78
Parking lights 43
Parking system
Adjusting the display/warning tone 124
Cleaning the rearview camera 116
Malfunction 124
Parking system plus 115
Peripheral cameras 119
Peripheral display 115
Trailer hitch 124
also refer to Parking systems 115, 116
Parking systems 114
Rearview camera 116
Parts replacement 276
Pass-through with ski sack 66
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 155
Passenger protection 185
Pedals 131
Pedestrian detection 104
Peripheral display 115
Physical principles of a frontal collision . . . 136
Polishing 207
Pollen filter
refer to Pollutant filter 68
Pollutant filter 68
Power
Windows 39
Power locking system
Locking/unlocking the vehicle from inside . 35
Unlocking and locking vehicle 33
Power seat adjustment 53
Power windows
Child safety lock 39
Convenience opening 40
Malfunction 40

162.561.4GA.23

Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt . . . 140
Pre sense . . . 185
Pressure (tires) . . . 251
Pretensioners
Pre sense . . . 185
Preventative passenger protection . . . 185
Prewarming . . . 75
Proper occupant seating positions . . . 127
Proper safety belt position . . . 139
Proper seating position
Front passenger . . . 128
Occupants . . . 127
Rear passengers . . . 129
Protecting . . . 207

Q

quattro (all wheel drive) . . . 192
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . 136

R

Radiator fan . . . 226
Rain/light sensor
Headlights . . . 43
Indicator light . . . 22
Intermittent (windshield wipers) . . . 49
Raising the vehicle . . . 269
Range (fuel level) . . . 24
Reading lights . . . 46
Rear fog lights . . . 43
Rear light
Indicator light . . . 21
Rear shelf . . . 63
Rear spoiler . . . 193
Rearview camera
refer to Parking systems . . . 115, 116
Rear view mirror . . . 48
Rear window defogger (four-zone automatic climate control) . . . 72
Rear window defogger (three-zone climate control) . . . 70
Recirculation mode (four-zone automatic climate control) . . . 71
Recirculation mode (three-zone climate control) . . . 69
Recuperation . . . 24
Refilling AdBlue
With bottle . . . 216
With canister . . . 216
Refuelling . . . 212
Remote control
Garage door opener (HomeLink) . . . 41
Unlocking and locking . . . 33
Remote control key
LED . . . 31
Replacing the battery . . . 31
Repair manuals . . . 274
Repairs
Airbag system . . . 158
Replacing windshield wiper blades . . . 50
Reporting Safety Defects . . . 133, 134
Reset button (trip odometer) . . . 26
Resetting the trip odometer . . . 26
Residual heat (four-zone automatic climate control) . . . 72
Retractor . . . 138
Reversible mat . . . 65
Rims . . . 248
Roof rack . . . 61
Loading . . . 62
Roof weight . . . 62

S

Safe driving habits . . . 126
Safety
Airbag system . . . 143
Belts . . . 135
Cargo . . . 132
Correct seating position . . . 127
Pedal area . . . 131
Safety belt position . . . 139
Safety belt height adjustment . . . 140
Safety belts worn by pregnant women . . . 140
Safety belt pretensioner
Service and disposal . . . 142
Safety belts . . . 135, 138
Cleaning . . . 207
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt . . . 136

Fastening 138
Height adjustment 140
Improperly worn 141
Not worn 136
Safety belt position 139
Safety instructions 137
Securing child safety seats 177
Special considerations for pregnant women 140
Unfastening 140
Warning/indicator light 135
Warning light 16
Worn properly 137
Safety belt tensioner
drive select 101
Safety belt warning light 135
Safety compliance sticker 271
Safety equipment 126
Safety features for occupant restraint and protection 126
Safety guidelines
Seat adjustment 52
Safety instructions
Engine compartment 218
for side curtain airbags 166
for using child safety seats 170
for using safety belts 137
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 157
Safety systems
Warning/indicator lights 18
Saving fuel
Cylinder on demand System 24
Efficiency program 25
Recuperation 24
Seat adjustment 53
Driver's seat 52
Front passenger's seat 53
Head restraints 129
Safety guidelines 52
Seat heating (four-zone automatic climate control) 72
Seat heating (three-zone climate control) . . 70
Seating position
Driver 127
Front passenger 128
How to adjust the front seats 128
Incorrect seat position 130
Occupants 127
Rear passengers 129
Seats
Cleaning 208
Convenience side view 57
Correct seating position 127
Seat symmetry 57
Seats (number) 135
Seat ventilation (four-zone automatic climate control) 72
Selective catalytic reduction
refer to AdBlue 214
Selector lever 107
Selector lever (automatic transmission)
Emergency release 113
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 142
Service interval display 26
Shift paddles 111
Ship (transporting your vehicle) 268
Side airbags
Description 161
How they work 163
side assist
Sensor range 98
Side assist 97
Adjusting the brightness 99
Cleaning the sensors 206
switching on and off 99
also refer to Side assist 97
Side curtain airbags 164
Description 164
How they work 165
Safety instructions 166
Ski sack 66
also refer to Trunk pass-through 66
Snow chains 248
Socket 59
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 184
Space-saving spare tire 254
Spare tire 254
Speed limiter 29
Speed warning system 82
Spoiler 193

Sport differential 101
Indicator light 22
Star button 24
Start-Stop-System 80
Engine does not switched off 81
Engine starts automatically 81
Indicator lights 80
Messages 82
Starting/stopping the engine 80
Switching off/on 82
START ENGINE STOP button 75
Starting from a stop
Hill start assist 79
Starting to drive
With a trailer 79
Starting (engine) 75, 80
Steering
Electrically adjustable steering wheel 74
Electromechanical steering 192, 0
Indicator light 17, 192
Manually adjustable steering wheel 74
also refer to Electromechanical steering . 192
Steering wheel
Buttons 24
Easy seat entry 75
Steering wheel heating 73
Steering wheel column
Adjusting electrically 74
Adjusting manually 74
Steering wheel with tiptronic 111
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 247
Stopping the engine 76
Stopping (engine) 80
Storage 63
Storage compartments 59
Storage hooks 65
S tronic (automatic transmission) 107
Launch control program 111
Sunroof 40
Convenience opening 40
Emergency closing 41
Sun shade 49
Sun visors 49
Symbols
refer to Warning/indicator lights 11

T

Tachometer 10, 11, 23
Tail lights
Cleaning 206
TDI clean diesel
refer to AdBlue 214
Technical data 271
Technical modifications 276
Temperature display 23
Coolant 10
Tether anchors 183
Tether strap 183
Three-zone climate control
Air vents 70
Auxiliary heater 70
Basic settings 70
Operating 69
Tie-downs 65, 133
Time 26
Tips for the environment
Saving fuel 62
tiptronic (automatic transmission) . . . 107, 111
Tires 233
All wheel drive 192
Low aspect ratio tires 249
Replacing 255
Service life 241
Tire pressure 243, 252
Tire pressure monitoring system 251
Tire pressure table 244
Treadwear indicators 241
Unidirectional 235
Uniform tire quality grading 250
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 235
Tires and vehicle load limits 245
Tools 253
Torn or frayed safety belts 137
Towing
Tow trucks 267
Towing loop 267
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) . . . 251
Trailer mode 201
Notes 203

Trailer towing
Operating instructions 201
Parking system 124
Technical requirements 201, 202
Train (transporting your vehicle) 268
Transmission malfunction (indicator light) . 112
Transport Canada 134
Transporting your vehicle 268
Trunk
refer to Luggage compartment 63
Trunk pass-through 66
Turn signals 44
Warning/indicator lights 22

U

ULSD No. 2 (Diesel fuel) 211
Unfastening safety belts 140
Uniform tire quality grading 250
Unlocking
Power locking switch 35
Remote control 33
Using the key 35

V

Vanity mirror 49
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 205
Out of service 198
Vehicle control modules 187
Vehicle electrical system 16
Vehicle identification label 271
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 271
Vehicle jack 253, 257
Vehicle transport 268
Ventilation 68

W

Warning/indicator lights
Airbag system 18
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 19
Brake system 14
Cruise control 22
Electromechanical parking brake 15
Electronic power control 20
Generator 16
Glow plug system 20
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 20
Safety belt 16
Turn signals 22
Warning/Indicator lights
Airbag system 154, 155
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 155
Warning triangle 253
Warranty coverages 274
Washer fluid level (indicator light) 21
Washer reservoir 231
Washing matte finish paint 205
Weights 271
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 139
What happens to unbelted occupants? 136
What impairs driving safety? 127
Wheel bolts 248
Wheels 233
Cleaning 206
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 235
Replacing 255
Tires and vehicle load limits 245
When must a safety belt be replaced? 137
When must the airbag system be inspected? 154
Where are lower anchorages located? 181
Wild animal recognition 104
Window regulators 39
Windows
Cleaning/removing ice 207
Defrosting (four-zone automatic climate control) 72
Defrosting (three-zone climate control) . . . 69
Windshield
cleaning 49
Defrosting (four-zone automatic climate control) 72
Defrosting (three-zone climate control) . . . 69
also refer to Windshield 49
Windshield washer system 49
Washer reservoir 231
Windshield wipers
Cleaning wiper blades 50
Folding up 50
Indicator light 21
Replacing windshield wiper blades 50
Switching on and off 49

162.561.4GA.23

Winter driving
Snow chains 248
Tires 248
Winter operation
Battery 228
Cooling system 224
Defrosting windows (four-zone automatic climate control) 72
Defrosting windows (three-zone climate control) 69
Seat heating (four-zone automatic climate control) 72
Seat heating (three-zone climate control) . 70
Steering wheel heating 73
Winter tires 248
Winter use
Car washes 205
Removing ice from windows 207

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. Audi, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products, without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

Text, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing.

All rights reserved. May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of AUDI AG. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Editorial deadline: 27/08/2014

For the sake of the environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Printed in Germany

© 2014 AUDI AG

Owner's Manual
2016 Audi A7 Sportback
2016 Audi S7 Sportback
Englisch USA 11.2014
162.561.4GA.23

1625614GA23

www.audi.com